



Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

GoogleTM books

<https://books.google.com>



L. As.
Inhar.

2^{m.} in 8°

Tsenberg.

OTHER WORKS
PRINTED
FOR THE USE OF THE ABYSSINIAN MISSION.

~~~~~  
*BY REV. C. W. ISENBERG:*

**AMHARIC SPELLING BOOK.** 8vo. 1s. 6d.

**AMHARIC CATECHISM.** 8vo. 1s. 6d.

**AMHARIC GEOGRAPHY.** 8vo. 3s. cloth.

**HISTORY OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD, in AMHARIC.** 8vo. — **PART I.**  
History of the Old Covenant, to the Destruction of Jerusalem, and the Death  
of St. John. — **PART II.** History of the Church, from the Death of St. John, to  
our Times. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

**DICTIONARY of the AMHARIC LANGUAGE.** 4to. £2.

**UNIVERSAL HISTORY in AMHARIC.** 8vo. 4s.

**VOCABULARY of the DANKALI LANGUAGE.** 12mo. 8d.

~~~~~  
BY REV. J. L. KRAPP:

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo. 6d.

ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL, Five Chapters, in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo. 6d.

GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE of the GALLA LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8d.

~~~~~  
*WORKS IN THE PRESS:*

**BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER** for the United Church of England and Ireland,  
in **AMHARIC**, by Rev. C. W. ISENBERG. 8vo.

**VOCABULARY of the GALLA LANGUAGE**, by Rev. J. L. KRAPP. 12mo.

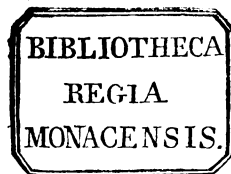


**GRAMMAR**  
**OF THE**  
**AMHARIC LANGUAGE.**

**BY THE**  
**REV. CHARLES WILLIAM ISENBERG,**  
**AUTHOR OF THE "AMHARIC DICTIONARY,"**  
**AND MISSIONARY OF THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY**  
**IN EAST AFRICA.**

---

**LONDON:**  
**PRINTED FOR THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY.**  
—  
**1842.**



LONDON :

---

PRINTED BY RICHARD WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.

## PREFACE.

---

IN presenting this work to the Public, the Author offers his humble thanks to God, for having enabled him to accomplish it. He was aware, when he first set his hand to it, not only of its importance with regard to Abyssinia—its character, religion, history, and destinies—but also of the difficulty of the task which he had undertaken. There was previously no Amharic Grammar extant, except Ludolf's\*; which, however it attests the superior talents of its author, considering the circumstances under which it was compiled, is but a feeble aid in the grammatical exhibition of the language. Nor was there any other literary source, on which the Author of this Grammar could draw, except the Amharic Bible, and those Amharic works which he himself had prepared. Under these circumstances, he had very often to feel out his way, by a recollection of the living language, in which he conversed with the Abyssinian people while residing among them. This recollection, however, was kept alive by the Author's having been, without interruption, occupied with the Amharic press, from his arrival in this country from Abyssinia up to this day. The preparation and publication of the Lexicon, immediately preceding his commencement of this Grammar, was peculiarly suited to prepare him for this work; for whilst, on the one hand, it laid open to him the whole of the materials of which that language is composed, as far as they are at present known, it furnished him also with ample opportunities to investigate the grammatical rules by which it is regulated. Every one, who has

---

\* See Preface to my Amharic Dictionary.

a judgment in these matters, will discover, when comparing the Dictionary with the Grammar, that the Author's own knowledge of the language has improved as he has advanced in his editorial labours. But although he is aware of the imperfections of his own works, he feels confident that a diligent study of this Grammar will, under the blessing of the Almighty, materially assist any Student in acquiring an accurate knowledge of the Amharic Language.

Although there is, as yet, no literature in the Amharic Language, its study is of considerable importance to Orientalists. Its Semitic origin cannot be questioned: it is evident in every feature. A little attention to what is said in this Grammar on the Nouns and Verbs, shows that it possesses a vigour and flexibility capable of expressing any idea; and that it may be very useful in throwing light on many subjects of difficulty in the cognate languages, especially the Hebrew, Syriac, and Coptic. Such a language, it is but reasonable to suppose, will be found rich in words. The Dictionary, which gives only those words which we at present possess, contains about 7000; and we may anticipate that a longer and more intimate acquaintance with the people of Abyssinia will furnish us with a great many more, and lead to important results, not only in reference to the Semitic, but also to the African Languages. With the latter the Amharic has much mutual interchange; as the Author has had opportunities to observe, in respect to the languages of the Danakil\*, the Somal, the Gallas†, the Argobbans, the natives of Harrar (or Arargê), and those of Garaguê. But the advantages to be derived from the study of this language, which should be accompanied by that of its parent language, the Ethiopic, are not merely of a scientific

---

\* See Dankali Vocabulary.

† See the Rev. J. L. Krapf's Galla Grammar, his Translation of St. Matthew's Gospel, and his Galla Vocabulary.

nature. When the covetous Abyssinian offers his hidden treasures to the speculating European—when he opens his barriers to the travelling naturalist, to explore his Ambas and his K'wallas—when that country, which stands single in the whole history of Eastern Nations, as a Christian State that was not overwhelmed by the sweeping floods of Islamism, attracts different and, in some measure, conflicting interests of religion, philanthropy and politics—the study of the living Abyssinian Languages, among which the Amharic stands foremost, will become indispensable; as is already experienced by those whom various motives induce to travel in Abyssinia.

With regard to the Church Missionary Society, the Author begs to repeat the same expressions of sincere gratitude, respect and solicitude, which he has uttered in the Preface to his Dictionary. Whatever the result of the present movements concerning Abyssinia and its future destinies may be; whether that nation is still to remain in its present uncivilized condition; whether it be doomed to fall a prey to that Spiritual Power which is assiduously endeavouring to regain the influence which it formerly possessed for a time, or whether it will open itself to the sound of the Gospel and its accompanying temporal and eternal blessings, and emerge into the light of truth and civilization; this Society has been the first instrument, in the hand of God, to offer the hand of Christian assistance and fellowship to them. If it pleases God to prosper their labours of love, they will be amply rewarded for all the difficulties and disappointments they have been subjected to, or which may be still awaiting them. May His blessing be upon them!

C. W. ISENBERG.

LONDON, Jan 4, 1842.

# ERRATA.

| <i>Page</i> | <i>Line</i> | <i>from</i> | <i>Read</i>        | <i>for</i>             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 18          | 12          | top,        | First              | Second.                |
| 28          | 11          | ...         | ልቅሶ፡               | ልቅሳ፡                   |
| 31          | 12          | ...         | ቀርቆር፡              | ቀርቆር፡                  |
| 38          | 4           | bottom,     | አደሁድ፡              | አደሁድ፡                  |
| 39          | 11          | ...         | Form               | From.                  |
| 42          | 11          | ...         | Twelfth            | Eleventh.              |
| 48          | 17          | top,        | Suffixes           | all Suffixes.          |
| 53          | 14          | ...         | መጉተ፡               | መጉት፡                   |
| 58          | 13          | ...         | ተሼጠ፡               | ተሼሐ፡                   |
| 63          | 8           | ...         | III.               | 3.                     |
| ..          | 9           | ...         | IV.                | 4.                     |
| 64          | 14          | ...         | አሉ፡                | ኦሉ፡                    |
| 65          | 23          | ...         | Regular Triliteral | Triliteral.            |
| 81          | 4           | ...         | conjugation        | verb.                  |
| 83          | 5           | bottom,     | መናገር፡              | መናገረ፡                  |
| 88          | 8           | ...         | ይሰጣብራሉ፡            | ይሰጣብራሉ፡                |
| ..          | 2           | ...         | ይሰጣብረ፡             | ይሰጣብረ፡                 |
| 90          | 7           | top,        | ያደራርግ፡             | ያደራርግ፡                 |
| 93          | 17          | ...         | the peculiarities  | and the peculiarities. |
| ..          | 20          | ...         | Radical            | Conjugation.           |
| 119         | 10          | ...         | ሺጣኝሁ፡              | ሲጣኝሁ፡                  |
| 129         | 4           | ...         | አለመለመ፡             | አለመለመ፡                 |
| 133         | 6           | ...         | ይከብለል፡             | ከከብለል፡                 |
| 139         | 10          | ...         | የሚያህል፡             | የሚያህል፡                 |
| 145         | 5           | bottom,     | ይመግብዋት፡            | ይመግቡት፡                 |
| 146         | 11          | ...         | thee               | them.                  |
| 147         | 10          | ...         | መግብዋችኋል፡           | መግብዋችል፡                |
| ...         | 1           | ...         | chapters           | chapter.               |
| 149         | 16          | top,        | ዝም፡                | ዘም፡                    |
| ...         | 26          | ...         | ፈቀቅ፡               | ፈቀቅ፡                   |
| 150         | 9           | ...         | "without"          | "within."              |
| 152         | 6           | ...         | ለምንድር፡             | ለመንድር፡                 |
| 158         | 20          | ...         | ከ—፡                | ካ—፡                    |
| 168         | 16          | ...         | ሰደደ፡               | ለደደ፡                   |
| 174         | 15          | ...         | show               | to show.               |

# CONTENTS.

|              |         |
|--------------|---------|
| INTRODUCTION | PAGE 1. |
|--------------|---------|

## PART I. PHONOLOGY.

### ON THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

|                                                                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| CHAP. I. On the Amharic Alphabet                                                                 | 3  |
| CHAP. II. Numerical Order and Names of the Letters                                               | 4  |
| CHAP. III. Virtue, Organical Classification, and Pronunciation of the Letters,                   | 6  |
| CHAP. IV. Seven Vocal Orders of the Abyssinian Letters                                           | 8  |
| CHAP. V. On Syllabification                                                                      | 11 |
| CHAP. VI. On Accentuation, and Interpunctuation                                                  | 13 |
| CHAP. VII. Various Changes of Letters:                                                           |    |
| 1. Addition                                                                                      | 16 |
| 2. Contraction                                                                                   | 16 |
| 3. Elision                                                                                       | 18 |
| 4. Changes produced and undergone by the letter <b>P</b> : and its corresponding Vowels, I and Ê | 19 |
| 5. Changes produced and undergone by the letter <b>D</b> : and its corresponding Vowels, U and O | 20 |
| 6. Changes occurring with the Diphthongs                                                         | 21 |
| 7. Reduplication of Letters                                                                      | 21 |
| 8. Exchange of Letters                                                                           | 21 |
| 9. Changes occurring with the Liquid Letters                                                     | 22 |
| 10. Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters                                            | 22 |

## PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

### ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

|                           |    |
|---------------------------|----|
| Preliminary Remarks       | 23 |
| CHAP. I. On the Nouns:    |    |
| SECT. I. Formation        | 24 |
| SECT. II. Species         | 35 |
| SECT. III. Gender         | 36 |
| SECT. IV. Number          | 38 |
| SECT. V. Declension       | 40 |
| CHAP. II. On the Numerals | 41 |

## CONTENTS.

### CHAP. III. On the Pronouns :

|                                          |           |    |
|------------------------------------------|-----------|----|
| SECT. I. Separable Personal Pronouns     | - - - - - | 43 |
| SECT. II. Separable Possessive Pronouns  | - - - - - | 45 |
| SECT. III. Demonstrative Pronouns        | - - - - - | 45 |
| SECT. IV. Interrogative Pronouns         | - - - - - | 46 |
| SECT. V. Reflective Pronouns             | - - - - - | 47 |
| SECT. VI. Separable Distributive Pronoun | - - - - - | 47 |
| SECT. VII. Indefinite Pronouns           | - - - - - | 48 |
| SECT. VIII. Inseparable Pronouns :       |           |    |
| 1. Personal Suffixes to Verbs            | - - - - - | 48 |
| 2. Possessive Suffixes to Nouns          | - - - - - | 49 |
| 3. Prefixed Relative Pronouns            | - - - - - | 50 |
| 4. Prefixed Distributive Pronoun         | - - - - - | 50 |

### CHAP. IV. On the Verbs :

|                                                                                          |           |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----|
| SECT. I. Formation and Quality                                                           | - - - - - | 50 |
| SECT. II. Various Derivations (Forms or Voices)                                          | - - - - - | 52 |
| List of Conjugations (Derivations, Voices) of the Regular<br>and Perfect Triliteral Verb | - - - - - | 53 |

#### Other Classes :

|                                                                                 |           |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----|
| i. Triliterals whose first Radical is a Guttural                                | - - - - - | 55 |
| ii. Geminant Triliterals                                                        | - - - - - | 56 |
| iii. Geminants whose first Radical is a Guttural                                | - - - - - | 56 |
| iv. Perfect Biliterals                                                          | - - - - - | 56 |
| v. Imperfect Biliterals of Prima <b>أ</b>                                       | - - - - - | 57 |
| vi. Defective Verbs :                                                           |           |    |
| 1. Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural at the End                                   | - - - - - | 57 |
| 2. Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle                                | - - - - - | 58 |
| 3. Verbs with an Absorbed <b>P</b> in the Middle                                | - - - - - | 58 |
| 4. Verbs with an Absorbed <b>D</b> in the Middle                                | - - - - - | 58 |
| 5. Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from<br>Quadriliterals            | - - - - - | 58 |
| 6. Verbs doubly Imperfect                                                       | - - - - - | 59 |
| vii. Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs :                                     |           |    |
| 1. Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals                                       | - - - - - | 59 |
| 2. Derivatives from Triliterals, having one Radical dou-<br>bled and transposed | - - - - - | 60 |
| 3. Geminants                                                                    | - - - - - | 60 |
| 4. Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals                       | - - - - - | 61 |



## CONTENTS.

### SECT. III. Flexion :

|             |           |    |
|-------------|-----------|----|
| I. Moods    | - - - - - | 61 |
| II. Tenses  | - - - - - | 62 |
| III. Number | - - - - - | 63 |
| IV. Persons | - - - - - | 63 |

### SECT. IV. Conjugation :

|                                                                           |                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-----|
| Auxiliaries                                                               | አለ : ነበረ : and ነፃ : | 64  |
| 1. Conjugation of the Perfect and Regular Triliteral Verbs                |                     | 65  |
| 2. Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of Triliteral Verbs :           |                     |     |
| I. Triliteral Verbs whose first Radical is A (አ : or ፀ :),                |                     | 93  |
| II. Triliteral Geminants                                                  | - - - - -           | 96  |
| III. Geminants whose first Radical is አ :                                 | - - - - -           | 102 |
| 3. Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs :                                       |                     |     |
| I. Perfect Biliterals                                                     | - - - - -           | 104 |
| II. Imperfect Biliterals <i>primæ radicalis</i> አ :                       | - - - - -           | 108 |
| III. Contracted Biliterals :                                              |                     |     |
| (aa) With Absorbed Guttural at the End                                    | - - - - -           | 113 |
| (bb) With Absorbed Guttural in the Middle                                 | - - - - -           | 116 |
| (cc) With Absorbed ፀ : in the Middle                                      | - - - - -           | 118 |
| (dd) With Absorbed ፀ : in the middle                                      | - - - - -           | 120 |
| IV. Doubly Imperfect Biliterals ;                                         |                     |     |
| (aa) Doubly Contracted                                                    | - - - - -           | 123 |
| (bb) Beginning with አ : and terminating with an Absorbed Guttural         | - - - - -           | 124 |
| (cc) Beginning with ፀ : , which absorbs a Guttural,                       |                     | 126 |
| 4. Conjugations of Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs :                 |                     |     |
| I. Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals                                 | - - - - -           | 128 |
| II. Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical doubled and transposed | - - - - -           | 131 |
| III. Geminants                                                            | - - - - -           | 132 |
| IV. Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals,               |                     | 134 |
| 5. Defective and Anomalous Verbs                                          | - - - - -           | 135 |

### SECT. V. Connection of Pronouns with Verbs

|                                  |           |     |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-----|
| CHAP. V. On the Adverbs          | - - - - - | 148 |
| CHAP. VI. On the Prepositions    | - - - - - | 153 |
| CHAP. VII. On the Conjunctions   | - - - - - | 158 |
| CHAP. VIII. On the Interjections | - - - - - | 159 |

## CONTENTS.

### PART III. SYNTAX.

|             |                                                                 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|
| CHAP. I.    | Nature of Sentences                                             | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 161 |
| CHAP. II.   | Subject and Attribute                                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 162 |
| CHAP. III.  | Uses and Construction of the Noun :                             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |
|             | A. Construction of Substantives with Substantives               | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 164 |
|             | B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives                 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 165 |
|             | C. Number of Nouns                                              | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 165 |
|             | D. Cases of Declension                                          | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 166 |
| CHAP. IV.   | Degrees of Comparison                                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 170 |
| CHAP. V.    | On the Numerals                                                 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 171 |
| CHAP. VI.   | Syntax of the Separable Pronouns                                | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 172 |
| CHAP. VII.  | On the Affixed Pronouns                                         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 173 |
| CHAP. VIII. | Construction of the Verb :                                      |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |
|             | SECT. I. On the Tenses                                          | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 174 |
|             | SECT. II. On the Moods                                          | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 176 |
|             | SECT. III. Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |
|             | Sentence                                                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 177 |
| CHAP. IX.   | Construction of the remaining Parts of Speech                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 178 |

---

### PART IV.

|    |                                    |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |
|----|------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|
| 1. | Conversational Modes of Salutation | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 179 |
| 2. | Exercises                          | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 183 |

# AMHARIC GRAMMAR.

## INTRODUCTION.

### ON THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE IN GENERAL.

I. **THE Amharic Language** (አምሃር፡ ቋንቋ::), a grammatical delineation of which the following pages propose to give, is that Abyssinian Dialect, which is spoken by the greater part of the population of Abyssinia: it prevails in all the provinces of Abyssinia lying between the Taccazê and the Abay or Abyssinian Nile, and in the kingdom of Shoa; and enters besides, extensively, into the languages of Argobba and Harrar. Its next cognate dialect is the *Tigrê Language* (ትግር፡ ቋንቋ::); which is spoken by the inhabitants of Tigrê or the N. E. part of Abyssinia, and has its modifications in the Dumhoeto Dialect at Massowa, and the coast N. of that island, and in the language of Gurāguê. Both the Amharic and the Tigrê Languages are modifications of the Ancient *Ethiopic* or *Gēēz* (ልዩ: ግዕዝ:), to which they bear nearly the same relation as some of our Modern European Languages to the Latin; viz. that of origin and derivation. \* However, the present language of Tigrê has preserved a greater similarity to the Ethiopic, and received much less mixture from other languages than the Amharic; the Amhāra people being of a more changeable character, and having had intercourse with a greater variety of foreign nations than their Tigrê brethren.

II. The denomination "Amharic," which this language has received, is obviously attributable to the province called *Amhāra*, situate between Shoa, Godjam, Bagammeder, Lasta, and Angot. That province, which is now the seat of the Yedjows, Argobbans, and other Galla tribes—who partly speak the Argobba dialect, partly the Galla language—must have been considered the chief province of Abyssinia at the time the language obtained that name: for not only have all the countries in which the same language is spoken—excepting Shoa and Efat, i.e. all the N. W.

countries of Abyssinia to the W. of the Taccazê—been called Amhāra, but the natives also frequently apply it to their religion; so that the appellation *Amharic* is used synonymously with *Christian*, although at present the greater part of the population of that province are Mohammedans. But in what the superiority of that province consisted, and the time when it was so pre-eminent, remains still a matter of inquiry: for the reasons which Ludolf assigns, that Amhāra was in the neighbourhood of Shoa, from which the Royal Family of Solomon, which spoke this language, was restored, after the downfall of the Zagæan line; and that Amba Geshen (better *Gêshê*), where subsequently the Princes of that family were confined, was situate in Amhāra—seem rather unsatisfactory; nor have we at present to offer any thing better in lieu of them.

III. From the fact of the Amharic Language being a descendant of the Ethiopic—which will be evident, from a superficial knowledge of both—it claims the same *affinity to the Semitic family* as its parent; although it has adopted other forms and words from surrounding nations, which bear no relation to that family. A knowledge, therefore, of any of the Semitic Dialects, such as the Hebrew and the Arabic, facilitates, to a great extent, the study of the Amharic. We shall, in the course of this work, have frequent occasions to refer to the Arabic and the Hebrew; although it will be our endeavour also to suit the capacity of those who may have had no opportunity of learning any but European languages.

IV. According to the nature of a Grammar, this work will be arranged under the following heads: 1. *Phonology*; 2. *Etymology*; 3. *Syntax*:—treating, in the First Part, on the Sounds and Letters; in the Second, on the different Parts of Speech; and in the Third, on the Grammatical Construction of Words into Sentences. There is, as yet, no occasion to speak on Amharic Prosody; but instead of this, we shall annex a variety of Amharic expressions, and a few Exercises.

---



| V. 𐤅𐤍                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | VI. 𐤅𐤍                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | VII. 𐤅𐤍                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bohemian ě, or iě, as<br>German <i>jeder</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Vowelless or short ě,<br>as in <i>since, summer</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | o usually sharp, as in<br><i>so, or like wo</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 𐤅𐤍𐤏: hāmīs ( <i>fifth</i> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 𐤅𐤍𐤏: sādīs ( <i>sixth</i> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 𐤅𐤍𐤏: sābē' ( <i>seventh</i> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <p>𐤅: hě (<i>Boh.</i>)</p> <p>𐤅: lě ..</p> <p>𐤅: hě ..</p> <p>𐤅𐤍: mǎ ..</p> <p>𐤅𐤍: sě ..</p> <p>𐤅: rě ..</p> <p>𐤅: sě ..</p> <p>𐤅: shě ..</p> <p>𐤅: k'ě ..</p><br><p>𐤅: bě ..</p> <p>𐤅: tě ..</p> <p>𐤅: tshě ..</p> <p>𐤅: hě ..</p> <p>𐤅: ně ..</p> <p>𐤅: gně ..</p> <p>𐤅: ă ..</p> | <p>𐤅: hě, or h</p> <p>𐤅: lě .. l</p> <p>𐤅: hě .. h</p> <p>𐤅𐤍: mě .. m</p> <p>𐤅𐤍: sě .. s</p> <p>𐤅: rě .. r</p> <p>𐤅: sě .. s</p> <p>𐤅: shě .. sh</p> <p>𐤅: k'ě .. k'</p><br><p>𐤅𐤍: bě .. b</p> <p>𐤅: tě .. t</p> <p>𐤅: tsḥ .. tsh</p> <p>𐤅: hě .. h</p> <p>𐤅: ně .. n</p> <p>𐤅: gně .. gn</p> <p>𐤅: ă ..</p> | <p>𐤅: ho or hwo</p> <p>𐤅: lo .. lūo</p> <p>𐤅: ho .. hwo</p> <p>𐤅𐤍: mo .. mūo</p> <p>𐤅: so .. sūo</p> <p>𐤅: ro .. rūo</p> <p>𐤅: so .. sūo</p> <p>𐤅: sho .. shūo</p> <p>𐤅: k'o .. k'ūo</p><br><p>𐤅: bo .. būo</p> <p>𐤅: toe .. tūo</p> <p>𐤅: tsho .. tshūo</p> <p>𐤅: ho .. hūo</p> <p>𐤅: no .. nūo</p> <p>𐤅: gno .. gnūo</p> <p>𐤅: ă ..</p> |

## PART I.—PHONOLOGY.

ON THE

## SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE.

## CHAP. I.

## ON THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

THE Amharic Language is written with the same letters as the Ethiopic; each letter varying in seven different forms, in order to express different sounds; Vowels and Consonants not being separated. But besides the Twenty-six Ethiopic, the Amharic Language has seven peculiar Orders of Letters, which serve to express sounds not existing in the former: they are the following:

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| ሸ: | ሸ፡ | ሸ፡ | ሸ፡ | ሸ፡ | ሸ፡ | ሸ፡ |
| ቸ: | ቸ፡ | ቸ፡ | ቸ፡ | ቸ፡ | ቸ፡ | ቸ፡ |
| ኸ: | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ |
| ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ |
| ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ |
| ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ |
| ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ | ኸ፡ |

These, added to the 26 Ethiopic orders, give to the Amharic Alphabet the number of 33 orders of letters; that is, each order consisting of 7 forms or characters, 231 different characters. Add to these the 4 times 5, i.e. 20 Diphthongs, you have 251; which, to commit to memory, call for the close application of the student. The Alphabetical Table opposite embodies them all; giving a correct exhibition of the numerical arrangement of the letters, with their names and value; and the phonical order, power, and Ethiopical designation of the seven different orders, with the pronunciation affixed in English to each character.

The Abyssinian Ciphers are as follow:

ሸ: 1. ቸ: 2. ኸ: 3. ኸ፡ 4. ኸ፡ 5. ኸ፡ 6. ኸ፡ 7. ኸ፡ 8. ኸ፡ 9. ኸ፡ 10. ኸ፡ 11. ኸ፡ 12. ኸ፡ 13. ኸ፡ 14. ኸ፡ 15. ኸ፡ 16. ኸ፡ 17. ኸ፡ 18. ኸ፡ 19. ኸ፡ 20. ኸ፡ 30. ኸ፡ 40. ኸ፡ 50. ኸ፡ 60. ኸ፡ 70. ኸ፡ 80. ኸ፡ 90. ኸ፡ 100. ኸ፡ 200. ኸ፡ 1000. ኸ፡ 2000. ኸ፡ or ኸ፡ 10000. ኸ፡ 100000.

NOTE.—A greater number of Diphthongs might have been added; as the Abyssinians, not being accustomed to write the language they speak, like to contract several sounds together, and to express them by single characters. Ludolf has given, in his Amharic Grammar, several specimens, showing how they apply this to foreign languages. We observe, here, that we have seen several instances of the same mode of proceeding in their own language: especially do they like to combine the fourth with the sixth form; *e.g.* ፳: twā, for ፳፱: ፳፱: fwā, for ፳፱፱: ፳፱፱: mwā, for ፳፱፱፱: &c. But as those figures have not been generally adopted, and the number of characters is already large enough, and suited to express almost any sound, we have abstained from mentioning them in the Alphabet; noticing them here only, in order to put those on their guard who may happen, in their intercourse with Abyssinians, to meet such uncouth figures, that they may not be frightened.

## CHAP. II.

### NUMERICAL ORDER, AND NAMES OF THE LETTERS.

1. For the general Order, in which these letters follow each other, no reason can be assigned; as it has no analogy in other languages, nor any foundation in the natural developement of sound from the organs of speech, but seems to have been arbitrarily put together. Exceptions are, the succession of ሀ: and ለ:: ተ: and ተ:: ኀ: and ኀ:: ከ: and ከ:: ዘ: and ዘ:: ጀ: and ጀ:: ጠ: and ጠ:: and ጸ: (for the resemblance of figure) ጸ: and ፀ::

2. The Names of the letters have been delivered to us from remote antiquity; and as most of them, if not all, are significant, we think it but proper to preserve them. They must have been formerly in general use among the Abyssinians, else it is not conceivable how they should have been transmitted to Europeans: but the natives of the present day know nothing about them, except from the schools of the Missionaries.\*

3. The signification of most of the names of the letters is clear: they refer to the sound they express, adding the adjective termination *āwi*, contracted into *āi*, or mis-spelled *oi*, for the masculine, and *āwit*, *āūt*, *āit*, or *āt*, for the

---

\* This, however, is no reason to omit them; because the Abyssinians do not at all dislike to have names put to their hitherto unnamed letters; many of which are the same as those which they know, from the Psalms, to belong to the sacred language of the Old Testament. Many of the most learned Abyssinians have applied to the Missionaries for the express purpose of learning the names of their own letters; and thought to have gained an invaluable treasure, when they had learned them.



feminine gender. A short analysis of these names, as far as it can be given, will establish this statement.

1. **ሀ** : Hoï, **ሀይ** : for **ሃይ** : or **ሃዊ** : the *h* letter.
2. **ለ** : Lāwī, **ለዊ** : the *l* letter.
3. **ሐ** : Hāūt, **ሐውት** : (f.) for **ሐዊት** : the *h* letter.
4. **መ** : Māi, **ማይ** : for **ማዊ** : the *m* letter.
5. **ሠ** : Sāūt, **ሠውት** : for **ሠዊት** : (fem.) the *s* letter.
7. **ሰ** : Sāt, **ሰት** : for **ሰዊት** : the *s* letter.
8. **ሸ** : Shāt, **ሸት** : for **ሸዊት** ::
11. **ተ** : Tāwī, **ተዊ** ::
12. **ቸ** : Tshāwī, **ቸዊ** ::
19. **ወ** : Wāwī, **ወዊ** ::
21. **ዘ** : Zāi, **ዘይ** : for **ዘዊ** ::
22. **ዝ** : Zāi (French *j*), **ዝይ** : for **ዝዊ** ::
27. **ጠ** : Tāit, **ጠይት** : for **ጠዊት** ::
28. **ጨ** : Tshāit, **ጨይት** : for **ጨዊት** ::
29. **ጰ** : Pāit, **ጰይት** : for **ጰዊት** ::

The following names are derived from the cognate Semitic Dialects, probably from the Hebrew, since they have the names of the Hebrew letters in the Psalms:

|     |            |        |              |      |   |        |
|-----|------------|--------|--------------|------|---|--------|
| 6.  | <b>ረ</b> : | Rě-ēs, | <b>ርዕስ</b> : | Heb. | ך | Rěsh.  |
| 9.  | <b>ቀ</b> : | Kāf,   | <b>ቀፍ</b> :  | ..   | ק | Kof.   |
| 10. | <b>በ</b> : | Bêt,   | <b>በት</b> :  | ..   | ב | Bêt.   |
| 16. | <b>አ</b> : | Alf,   | <b>አልፍ</b> : | ..   | א | Alef.  |
| 17. | <b>ከ</b> : | Kāf,   | <b>ከፍ</b> :  | ..   | כ | Kāf.   |
| 20. | <b>ዐ</b> : | Āin,   | <b>ዐይን</b> : | ..   | ע | Āin.   |
| 26. | <b>ג</b> : | Geml,  | <b>ገምል</b> : | ..   | ג | Gīmel. |

With regard to their significations, the student is referred to the Hebrew Lexicon.

Concerning the rest, the signification of which is not so clear, we leave them for the amusement of such as will take the trouble of searching in the *Ethiopic and the cognate dialects*.

## CHAP. III.

ON THE VIRTUE, ORGANICAL CLASSIFICATION, AND PRONUNCIATION  
OF THE LETTERS, CONSIDERING THEM AS SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

1. As to the VIRTUE of the letters, we must state, first of all, that Consonants and Vowels are combined in the same characters; and on this account, each letter is able to present a syllable by itself. But laying aside, for the present, the Vowel question, we proceed at once to CLASSIFY the letters according to the organs chiefly concerned in their pronunciation.

2. According to the *organs*, the letters are divided—

A. In *Gutturals*: **U**: **ሐ**: **ኀ**: **ከ**: **አ**: **ዐ**::

B. In *Palatals*: **ቀ**: **ከ**: **ቀ**: **ኀ**::

C. In *Linguals* and *Dentals*: **ለ**: **ወ**: **ረ**: **ሰ**: **ሸ**: **ተ**: **ቸ**: **ኒ**: **ዘ**:  
**ኸ**: **ደ**: **ጀ**: **ጠ**: **ጪ**: **ጸ**: **ፀ**::

D. In *Labials*: **መ**: **ቦ**: **ወ**: **ጸ**: **ፈ**: **ቸ**::

E. *Nasal*: **ኸ**::

3. In speaking on the PRONUNCIATION of these letters, we must refer to the Ancient Ethiopic, the various dialects of Abyssinia, especially the Tigrê, and the cognate Semitic Languages.

A. The *Gutturals*.—In the present Amharic, **U**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**: are pronounced alike, like *h* in *horse*, and are often exchanged for **አ**:, thus entirely dropping the aspiration. The Tigrê language shows us, however, that each of these letters must have formerly expressed a distinct and different sound; for in it, **U**: sounds like our *h* in *horse*, and answers the Arabic **ه**, and the Hebrew **ה**. **ሐ**: is pronounced with a pressure in the lower part of the throat, like the Arabic **ح**; **ኀ**: like the Swiss *ch*, the Arabic **خ**, and the Hebrew **ח**; and **ከ**: like the Scotch and German *ch*, in *loch*, *nicht*, and answering the Hebrew **כ** without the Dagesh. This pronunciation of the **ከ**: is equally in use in the Amharic language.

**አ**: and **ዐ**: are both pronounced alike, as the Greek Spiritus lenis ('); but in the Tigrê they are different among each other, **አ**: being like Spiritus lenis, *l*, or *N*, and **ዐ**: like the Arabic **ع** and Hebrew **ע**, with the same pressure in the throat as the **ح**, but without the aspiration.

B. The *Palatals*:

**ቀ**: corresponds with **ק** in the Hebrew, and with **ق** in the Arabic Language. On account of its peculiar pronunciation, we may call it an *explosive* letter, such as **ጠ**: **ጪ**: and **ጸ**: in the third, and **ጸ**: in the

fourth class: it is a sudden explosion of breath from the palate, after the latter has been spasmodically contracted. We have endeavoured to represent this pronunciation, after the example of Ludolf, by writing *K'*, but it must be heard before it can be conceived. This pronunciation, however, is not uniform, although general. In Tigrê, it is besides often pronounced like the Arabic ك, often like ق; in Shoa generally, like a mere *Spiritus lenis* ('), similar to the ق as pronounced by common people in Egypt. Thus the word **ṬḤḤḤ**: is pronounced in three or four different ways: in good language, *Tāk'ab/bälä*; in Tigrê, *Täghäb/bälä* (تَغَبَل) and *Tākab/bälä* (تَقَبَل); and in Shoa, *Tä-äb/bälä*.

**Ḥ**: sounds like our *k*, or *c* before consonants.

**P**: is pronounced like *y* as consonant, or like the German *j* &c.

**Ḡ**: is pronounced like our *g* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and before consonants.

#### C. The *Linguals* and *Dentals*:

**Ḍ**: like our *l*.

**W**: and **Ḥ**: may originally (perhaps answering ص and س, Ḍ and Ḥ) have sounded differently from each other: at present, they are pronounced alike, sounding like our *s*.

**Z**: sounds like our *r*.

**Ḥ**: formed in the Amharic by the accession of the *i* sound to the **Ḥ**: and **W**:, is the same as ش, Ṣ, and *sh*.

**Ṭ**: is pronounced like ت, Ṭ, and *t*.

**Ṭ**: formed by combining a soft sibilation with **Ṭ**, sounds like *tsh*, or rather like *t* with a German *j*.

**Ḥ**: is the same as our *n*.

**H**: is like *z*.

**Ḥ**: like the French *j*.

**G**: is the same with our *d*.

**Ḥ**: sounds like the English *j*, or rather like the German *dj*: it is often used to express the Arabic ح.

**Ḥ**: **Ḥ**: and **G**: are the same sort of letters in this class as the **Ḥ**: in the Second, which we call *Explosive*; because they, as it were, explode from between the fore-part of the tongue and the roof of the mouth or the root of the teeth. We have in the Alphabet represented them by writing *t'*, *tsh'*, and *ts'*. But as some more or less hissing seems to accompany this explosion, **Ḥ**: and **G**: frequently interchange.

**Ḥ**: is pronounced like *ts*, or the German *z*.

**D. The Labials :**

**Ṣ** : is the same as our *m*.

**Ḳ** : the same as our *b*. In Tigrê, it generally sounds like *v*, **Ḳ**, or the Modern Greek  $\beta$  : and this pronunciation must have been formerly more general ; for otherwise it seems unaccountable, how it could have been turned into a mere vowel *o*, as in **ṢḲḲ** : ; whereas the soft *b*, our *v*, being a mere condensation of that Vowel, was more liable to that change.

**Ṭ** : is the same as *w*.

**Ḳ** : the explosive letter of this class : the breath puffs off from between the lips, before the vowel is heard.

**Ḳ** : is the same as **Ḳ**, **Ḳ**, and *f*.

**T** : our *p*, merely used for foreign words.

**E. The Nasal Ṭ** : is pronounced similar to the French and Italian *gn*, or rather like the Spanish *ñ*.

4. The letters are to be further divided, as in other Semitic Dialects, into *Radicals* and *Serviles*. Servile letters are those which are employed in the process of grammatical formation, derivation, and flexion : the radicals are never so employed. The serviles are often radical, though Radicals are never servile. The Servile Letters are,

**Ḳ : Ṣ : Ḳ : Ḳ : Ḳ : Ḳ : Ḳ : Ḳ : Ḳ :**

~~~~~

CHAP. IV.

ON THE SEVEN VOCAL ORDERS OF THE ABYSSINIAN LETTERS.

1. As the Abyssinian Languages differ from the other Semitic Dialects (except the Coptic), in being written from the left to the right ; so they are likewise different from them, as well as from most other languages, in the manner in which the Voices or Vowels are expressed.

2. This is done in the Abyssinian Languages, not, as in the other Semitic Dialects, by any smaller points or figures written above or below the line ; nor, as in other languages, by a distinct sort of characters of equal value with the Vowelless Consonants ; but by a system of changes which the original letter itself undergoes ; each letter *expressing Consonant and Vowel in the same figure*, and *assuming seven different forms*, according to the Vowels which are attached to it ; which forms (after Ludolf) we call *Orders of Letters*.

NOTE.—The terms “Consonant” and “Vowel” are not quite suitable to the Abyssinian Alphabet; as the Vowels themselves are but con-sonant, being inexpressible by themselves; and the Consonants being, as appears from the Sixth Order, in form more independent than the Vowels: but to be understood, we must use the expression.

3. The Seven different *Voices* or *Vowels* expressed by these Seven Orders are these:

A. Short *ä*, as in *fat, lad, &c.*; answering the Fat-ha (◌َ) in the Arabic, and the Patach (◌ַ) in the Hebrew. Like the former, it is modifiable, approaching the *ê* sound, or the short Hebrew Segol (◌ֿ).

B. *û*, as in *full, put, lucid*; or *ô*, as in *move*; or *oo*, as in *fool, &c.*

C. *î*, as in *pin, finger, hinder*; or *ee*, as in *bee, see*; or *ea*, as in *read, sea*; or *e*, as in *scene*.

D. *ā*, as in *far, father, rather*.

E. *ë* or *ê*; a sharp *ê*, with a slight *i* sound before it, as in the Slavonian Dialects; as the German *je*, “ever,” or the English *yea*.

F. *ě* or *ÿ*, as in *liv-er, ber-ry*. This order also is often mute or vowel-less, as in the English and French Languages the mute *ë*. In fact, it completely resembles the Shwa simplex (◌◌) of the Hebrew Language.

G. *ó*, generally sharp, as in *so*; or with *w* before it, as in *woe, wonder*.

4. In order to express these seven sounds by each letter, the Abyssinians have adopted the following plan:

A. The *Original Form* is used for the expression of the *First Vowel* (*ä*). It therefore is called, with its Ethiopic name, **ግዕዝ**: *Gē-ēz*, which signifies “original”; and is therefore applied to the Ethiopic Language in general (**ልዩነት ግዕዝ**), in order to distinguish it from any translation. In reference to the letter forms, it means the original, simple, unaltered form, **ሀ**: **ለ**: **ሐ**: &c.

B. The *Second Vowel* (*û*), which is called **ካዕብ**: *Kā-ēb*, i.e. “altered,” “second,” is expressed by the affixion of a point (◌◌) to the right-hand side of the letter, generally in the middle (**ሁ**: **ቁ**: **መ**: **ኡ**:); in four instances at the bottom (**ረ**: **ወ**: **ደ**: **ጀ**:); and in one instance, under the letter (**ፈ**:).

C. The *Third Vowel* (*î*), which is called **ሣለስ**: *Sālēs*, i.e. “third,” is generally represented by a similar point annexed to the foot of the letter on the right side, and below the line, (**ላ**: **ባ**: **ኣ**: **ኵ**: **ደ**:). Where the original has no foot (i.e. line going downwards), a foot is formed; and in

order thereby not to enlarge the general size of the letter, the rest is diminished where it has been thought necessary (**ሂ: ማ: ሢ: ፂ: ፃ:**). Where the original has a point below, that is turned upwards (**ሪ: ፈ:**). An exception is, **፪::**

D. The *Fourth Vowel* (**፳**), called **ራብዕ: Rābē'** "the fourth," effects seven different changes:

- (a) A foot line is made as in the preceding order, but without point: **ሂ: ማ: ሢ: ፂ: ፃ: ፄ: ፅ::**
- (b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **ላ: ሐ: ሳ: ሿ: ገ: ኣ: ካ: ኸ: ሣ: ሣ: ጣ: ጪ: ጸ: ጸ::**
- (c) A short horizontal line with point, is added, to the left at the bottom: **ቀ: ታ: ቸ: ቻ: ያ: ጋ: ጋ::**
- (d) The same added to the right at the head: **ፍ:** doubled **ፉ::**
- (e) Foot line broken: **ራ::**
- (f) Foot point to the left shortened: **፪: ፪:**

E. The change effected by the *Fifth Vowel* (**፷**), called **አሙስ: Hāmēs** "fifth," is simple: it consists in adding a small circular line or eye to the right side at the bottom, or in the middle: in instances where the letter has received a foot line in the two preceding forms, at the bottom of that line; e.g. **ሂ: ላ: ማ: ፂ: ጪ: &c.**

F. The greatest diversity is presented by the *Sixth Order* (**፶** or **ሃ**) **ሳፈስ: i.e.** "sixth." Instead of analyzing it, we recommend the scholar to examine that column himself in the Alphabet.

G. The *Seventh Vowel* (**ዐ**) **ሳብዕ: Sābē', i.e.** "seventh," effects the following changes:

- (a) A small circular line is formed at the top: **ሆ: ለ: ፍ: ቀ: ተ: ቸ: ቸ: ፍ: ፍ: ፍ: ፍ::**
- (b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **ሐ: ሳ: ሿ: ገ: ኣ: ካ: ኸ: ሣ: ሣ: ጣ: ጪ: ጸ: ጸ::**
- (c) Foot lines on the left side or in the middle are formed: **ቀ: ታ: ቸ: ቻ: ያ: ጋ: ጋ::**
- (d) Other forms are, **ፉ: ፉ: ፉ::**

5. As for the *quantity* of the vowels, it must be said, that those of the First and Sixth Order are constantly *short*; those of the Fourth and Fifth constantly *long*; and the rest are sometimes long, sometimes short.

NOTE.—Concerning the Diphthongs, as their pronunciation presents no difficulty, nothing remains to be said except what has been mentioned in Chap. I.

CHAP. V.

ON SYLLABIFICATION.

1. In the Abyssinian Languages, each letter, being Consonant and Vowel in the same figure, is able to constitute a *Syllable*; e.g. **ገገ**: nă-gă-ră; **ገገፍ**: nē-fā-k'è. Such syllables, formed by single letters, we may call *simple* or *open syllables*.

2. But although this is the case, they *can* combine two or three letters (not more) together, to form one syllable; which will be called, if consisting of two letters, a *closed*; if of three, a *compound* syllable. Thus, e.g. **ቃል**: k'āl, "word," is closed; **ሕዝብ**: hēzb, "people," is compound.

3. This is performed with the assistance of the Sixth Order; the vowel of which being short, and rather a semi-vowel, or the same thing as the Hebrew Shwā (וְ), is liable to become *mute*. Whenever this occurs, its letter must be added either to the preceding or to the following letter, in order to be pronounceable; e.g. **ገር**: gā-r, "meek." **በልሃት**: bēl-hā-t, "dexterity."

4. The question then is, *When is the letter of the Sixth Order mute or vowelless?* A few general rules, which will answer it, shall be laid down here.

A. Letters of the Sixth Order are MUTE at the end of words generally; e.g. **ሀር**: hār, "silk"; **ቃል**: k'āl, "word"; **ገር**: năgār, "word," "thing"; **ፀሐይ**: tsa-hāy, "sun"; **ዓለም**: ā-lam, "world."

NOTE.—Seeming deviations, but no real ones, are those Ethiopic words which in the Amharic have been abbreviated: in such instances, the final letter of this form is not vowelless, reminding of the guttural letter, which is no longer written, but still pronounced:

ሰም: sā-mě, "wax." Eth. **ሰምዕ**::

ብር: bē-rē, "pencil." Eth. **ብርዕ**::

እንጅ: en-djy, "but." Eth. **እንጅዓ**::

A real exception is this, which occurs in Feminine terminations of Pronouns or Verbs, in the Second Person Singular of the Feminine Gender, which are sometimes written in the third, sometimes in the sixth form, and may be pronounced or not; e.g. **አንት**: better **አንቲ**: an-tshy, "thou (female)!" **ቀጅ**: or **ቀጂ**: k'ā-dj, or k'ā-djy, "draw (thou female)!"

B. The same letters *remain* MUTE, when the words to which they belong, receive such additions at the end, by which their form is not changed: e.g. **ጥር**: tshār, "kind." **ጥርነት**: tshār-nāt, "kindness." **ባል**: bā-l, "husband," "owner." **ባልተት**: bāl-tēt, "widow."

NOTE.—An exception is **ቃልቻ**: k'ā-lē-tshā, "sorcerer," "soothsayer."

C. When two letters of this order meet together at the end of a vowel, both are mute, unless want of organic affinity, or gemination, prevents their being so; but when such a word is augmented at the end, the last letter of this order is sounded:

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) ደርቅ : dā-rk', "dry." | ለምጽ : lā-mts', "leprosy." |
| መርዝ : mā-rz, "poison." | ቀንድ : k'ā-nd, "horn." |
| ዓይን : ā-yn, "eye." | |
| (b) ልግም : lē-gēm, "superficiality." | ግብዝ : gē-bēz, "hypocrite." |
| አቅም : ā-k'ēm, "measure." | አጭር : ā-tsh'yr, "short." |
| (c) ስምም : sē-mēm, "harmony." | አልል : ē-lēl, "huzzah!" |
| ክትት : kē-tēt, "perfection," "fulness." | |
| (d) ቅድስና : k'ēd-sē-nā, "holiness." | ዝምድና : zēm-dē-nā, "relationship." |

D. When a letter of the sixth form commences a word, its vowel is generally sounded:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| ልደት : lē-dāt, "birth." | ክፉ : kē-fū, "bad." |
| ስጠኝ : sē-t'āng, "give me." | ክረምት : kē-rāmt. |

E. In trilateral words, where all the three letters are of the sixth order, the first is generally sounded; the two following are not:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| ሕዝብ : hē-zb, "people." | ጽድቅ : ts'ē-dk', "righteousness." |
| ድንቅ : dē-nk', "wonder." | እርም : ē-rm, "a thing prohibited." |
| ርስት : rē-st, "heritage." | ምሽት : mē-sht, "wife." |

F. In trilateral words, where the two first letters are of the sixth order, the first is sounded; the second is not:

- | | |
|--|--|
| ገርማ : gē-r-mā, "majesty." | እንጂ : ē-n-djā, "I do not know." |
| ግምጃ : gē-m-dja, "muslin cloth." | |

But in many cases the second letter also is sounded:

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| ግሥላ : gē-sē-lā, "brown leopard." | ቅምቫ : k'ē-mē-shā, "a bit." |
| እጅጌ : ē-djē-gē, "sleeve." | |

G. In quadrilateral words, beginning with two letters of the sixth order, and terminating in — **ት**: feminine, the first letter is sounded; the second is mute:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ፍልጠት : fē-l-t'āt, "megrim." | ፍርሃት : fē-r-hāt, "fear." |
| ንፍገት : nē-f-gāt, "avarice." | ንብረት : nē-b-rat, "state." |

H. In quadriliteral feminine adjectives, whose letters are all of this order, the first and second letters are sounded, whilst the rest are mute:

ንጽሕት: nē-ts'ē-ht, "pure." **ቀድሰት**: k'ē-dē-st, "holy."
ርክሰት: rē-kē-st, "impure." **ጽድቅት**: ts'ē-dē-k't, "righteous."

I. In quadriliteral words, whose three first letters are of the sixth order, the first and second are generally sounded, whilst the third is mute, unless obviated by Lit. C.:

ንሐለተ: ē-lē-l-tā, "the shouting." **ንጽሕፍ**: nē-ts'ē-h-nā, "purity."

J. In pluriliterals, beginning with three letters of this order, these are generally formed into one syllable; either the first and third, or the second and third letters being mute:

ክርስቲስ: Krē-s-tos, "Christ." **ፍሬምቢያ**: frē-m-biā, "breast-bone."

NOTE.—These rules will meet most cases: we refrain from adding more at this place, as it would swell this chapter to too large an extent; while in the further course of the Grammar, especially in those parts which treat on the Pronouns and the Verbs, the rest will be easily deduced.

CHAP. VI.

ON ACCENTUATION, AND POINTS OF DISTINCTION.

1. The Abyssinians have no marks for their accents. Some general Rules for Accentuation are as follow:—

A. In words consisting of long and short syllables (long and short either by the number of letters or by the quantity of vowels), the long syllable generally has the accent:

ጥረ: tērē, "raw," "genuine." **ገረ**: gērā, "left." **በገ**: bāgò, "good."
ንጽ: nētsū, "pure." **ባደ**: bādo, "empty." **ሃረ**: zārē, "to-day."

In these two latter instances, the first syllable has the accent, because the long ā of the fourth order is the longest vowel:

ገደም: gādām, "convent." **ንፈቅ**: nēfāk'ē, "heresy."
ፈቃድ: fāk'ād, "will." **ቀደስ**: k'ēdūs, "holy."
መኖር: mānòr, "the dwelling." **ሆደም**: hodām, "voracious."
መልካም: māl-kām, "good," "beautiful." **ዝምድን**: zēm'dēnā, "affinity."

B. In Verbs, the radix without affirmatives, as well as with light affirmatives (*affirmativa levia*), has the accent on the antepenultima (on the third syllable from the end):

ነበረ: näbärä, "he was."

ተቀመጠ: täk'ä'mät'a, "he sat down."

ገለጽሁ: gäl'ats'hü, "I have revealed."

See, however, more under the Verbs.

C. Feminine Adjectives and Substantives of the form ንገሥት: have the accent on the last syllable; e.g. ርገምት: rëgëm't, "cursed."

D. Other Dissyllabic words with short vowels require the accent on penultima:

ልደት: lëdät, "birth."

ወምበር: wä'mbär, "a seat," "chair."

ገንዘብ: gän'zäb, "property."

ድንገል: dëngël, "virgin."

E. The heavier Suffixes (*suffixa gravia*) and Affirmatives require the accent directly to precede them:

ቀምበር: "the yoke."


ቀምበረችን: k'ämbärätshën, "our yoke."

መለሰ: "he brought back."

መለሰችሁ: mäläsätshëhü, "you brought back."

2. The *Interpunctuation* of the Abyssinians is very simple. A simple colon (:) serves to divide words from words; and a double colon (::) to separate sentences from sentences.

NOTE (a)—The colon, which is to prevent words running together, and thereby creating confusion, was formerly a perpendicular line (|), as is evident from inscriptions found at Axum; but that line has been divided into two points, as it was otherwise liable to have been mistaken for the numeral I (10).

(b) The double colon (::) is, in Abyssinian manuscripts, generally reserved for the end of paragraphs; when five red points are inserted into it in the form of a cross, in this manner, 

EXERCISE FOR READING.

(From "the Church History," p. 223.)

Bähawär' yāt	zä'män	bäbêtä Crës tī yān	ën dëhh yälätsh
በሐዋርያት:	ዘመን:	በቤተ: ክርስቲያን:	እንዲሁ: ያለች:
In the Apostles'	time	in the Church	such
ä'n dë nät	nä'bärätshëbät,	hülätshäü	ä'ndë sëgä än' dit
እንድት:	ነበረች ባት:	ሁላቸው:	አንድ: ሥጋ: አንዲት:
a union	was in her,	all of them	one body one
näfsem	es ki ho'nü dë räs.	Crës tiyā nätem	hü'lü ba Cres tòs
ገፍሰም	እስጢፍስ: ድረ፡:	ክርስቲያናትም:	ሁሉ: በክርስቲስ:
soul and	that they were	the Christians and	all in Christ

kǎ'to ǎltǎlǎ' yǔm. hǔlǎ'tshǎu yǎ A'dām' lǎdjǎ'tsh ǎndǎ
ከተ: **አልተለዩም:** **ሁላቸው:** **የአደም:** **ልጆች:** **እንደ:**
 never were separated. all of them of Adam children as

 nǎ'bǎrǔ bǎ sǎgā, hǔlǎtsh ǎ ūm la rāsā'tshǎu
ነበሩ: **በሥጋ:** **ሁላቸውም:** **ለራሳቸው:**
 they were after the flesh, all of them and (as left) to themselves

 yālǎ Crǎst os yǎt'ǎ'fǔ hāt'e-'ān ǎn dǎ nǎ'bǎrǔ ǎn dǎh ūm
ያለ: **ክርስቲስ:** **የጠፋ:** **ፓፕአን:** **እንደ:** **ነበሩ:** **እንደሁም:**
 without Christ lost sinners as they were, so also

 bǎhǎ'imānot hǔlǎ'tshǎu bānde Crǎ st'os. dānǔ.
በሃይማኖት: **ሁላቸው:** **ባንድ:** **ክርስቲስ:** **ደኑ:**
 by faith all of them through one Christ were they saved.

 hǔlǎtsh ǎum bān dǎ mats' rāt tāts'ǎ'rǔ. bān dǎ dǎ'mǎm
ሁላቸውም: **ባንድ:** **መጽረት:** **ተጸሩ:** **ባንድ:** **ደምም:**
 they all and by one calling were called. by one blood and

 ts'ǎdǎk'ǔ bān dǎ mǎn'fǎ sǎm nǎts'ǔ tǎk'ǎ'dǎsǔm. P'ǎt'ros ǎm
ጸደቁ: **ባንድ:** **መንፈስም:** **ነጹ:** **ተቀደሱም:** **ጴጥሮስም:**
 justified, by one Spirit and purified sanctified and. Peter also

 lǎ mǐ yǎ mǎn hǔlǎ ǎ lǎ: ǎ lǎn te yǎ mǎ'n gǎs tǎnǎ
ለሚያምኑ: **ሁሉ:** **አለ:** **እላንተ:** **የመንግሥተ:**
 to believers all said: You of the kingdom (royalty) and

 yǎkǎhǎnǎt wǎ'gǎn nǎtshǎhǔ, yǎtāmǎ'rǎt'ǎtshǎm
የክህነት: **ወገን:** **ናቸው:** **የተመረጠችም:**
 of the priesthood a people, are, which is elected and

 yǎtǎk'ǎ'dǎsǎtshǎm tǎ ū' lid, tǎg'ǎlt'ǔ zǎnd
የተቀደሱትም: **ትውልድ:** **ትገልጹ:** **ዘንድ:**
 and sanctified a generation, you should manifest that

 kǎtsh'ǎ'lǎmǎ wǎdǎ mǐ yās dǎnǎk'ǎu wǎdǎ bǎrhānǔ
ከዉለማ: **ወደ:** **ሚያስደንቀው:** **ወደ:** **ብርሃኑ:**
 from darkness unto marvellous unto his light

 yǎts'ǎrǎ'tshǎhǔn sǎrǎ.
የጸረችሁን: **ስራ:**
 of Him that hath called you the works.

IN ENGLISH CONSTRUCTION.

"In the time of the Apostles, there was such an union in the Church, that they (the Christians) were all one body and one soul. Christians were never (in no wise) separated in Christ. As all of them were Adam's children, after the flesh, and as in themselves and without Christ they

were lost sinners, so also (now) by faith they were saved through one Christ. They were all called with one calling; justified by one blood; and purified and sanctified by one Spirit. Peter also said to all believers: Ye are a royal and priestly people, a chosen and a sanctified generation, that ye should shew forth the works of Him that hath called you out of darkness unto His marvellous light."

CHAP. VII.

VARIOUS CHANGES OF LETTERS.

In order the better to comprehend the various euphonical changes occurring in the constitution of words in the different parts of speech, it is necessary to point out the rules by which the changes in the letters are regulated.

1. *Addition of Letters.*

Speaking, in the first instance, of the ADDITION of letters to words, we regard them as they are joined either at the beginning, or in the middle, or at the end,—prosthesis, epenthesis, and paragoge.

A. When a word commences with a liquid letter, esp. **ṛ**: or **ḥ**:, the **ḥ**: is often preposed; e.g. **ḥfḥp**: for **fḥp**: Nārēā. The preformative, also, to the First Person Plural of Verbs, in the Present Tense Indicative and Subjunctive, has **ḥṛ**—: for the Ethiopic **ṛ**—:: **ḥṛṣṣḥḥḥḥ**: “we return”; not **ṛṣṣḥḥḥḥ**:: **ḥḥḥ**: for **ḥḥ**: “head.” **ḥḥp**: for **ḥp**: “wet.”

B. In the middle and at the end after long vowels, **ፐ፡** is inserted or affixed; e.g. **ጊዜፐ፡** for **ጊዜ**: "time." **ስራውፐ፡** "and the work"; for **ስራ፡፡**

NOTE.—This euphonical **Θ** must not be confounded with the suffixed pronoun **Θ**, which only by the context can be distinguished from it.

2. Contraction of Letters.

CONTRACTION occurs most frequently to the vocal letters **א:** (**ו:**) **ו:** and **פ:**, besides these to the gutturals **ו:** **ח:** and **צ:**. They answer the **אָהָה** letters of the Hebrew Language, in their becoming quiescent. This is especially the case—

A. In verbs and words derived from them, which, originating in the Ethiopic, on their transition into the Amharic have dropped the gutturals, as not compatible with the character of the latter language. In compensation

for this loss of the consonant, they have retained the vowel, and joined it to the preceding letter :

Amharic.	Ethiopic.	
ማረ:	for ምሕረ:	"to pity," "have mercy."
ጻፈ:	.. ጸሐፈ:	"to write."
ተማረ:	.. ተመሀረ:	"to learn."
መላ:	.. መልክ:	"to be full," "to fill."
ገባ:	.. ገብክ:	"to enter."
ሰራ:	.. ሰርሐ:	"to work."
ሠራ:	.. ሠርዐ:	"to order," "to constitute."
አፈራ:	.. አፋረዖ:	"to bring forth fruit."
ጽፈት:	.. ጽሕፈት:	"writing."

B. When a word beginning with **አ**: receives a preformative of the first, fourth, or sixth order, the **አ**—: consonant is dropped, and the vowel absorbed by the preceding letter. If **አ**—: stands in the first order, it changes the preceding short letter to one of the fourth order; if the fourth order precedes, no contraction takes place; if **አ**: is of the sixth order, it sometimes changes the preceding short into a long letter, sometimes it does not at all affect it:

አንገት:	"the neck."	ባንገት:	"on the neck."
እርዖ:	"a swine."	ለርዖ:	"to a swine."
አደረገው:	"he did it."	ዖደረገው:	"he who did it."
አገኘ:	"he found."	ተገኝለህ:	"thou wilt find."

C. The same change, without loss of consonant, takes place with suffixes commencing with **ā**:

ሰራችሁ: "your work," from ሰራ: and **ā** ችሁ::

But when such suffixes are joined to letters ending in **ū** or **o**, these letters are changed into diphthongs:

ሰጠኋት: from ሰጠሁ: and **ā**ት: "I gave her."

When joined to letters of the fifth form, the suffix **ā** assumes the **P**:, as similar to the fifth vowel; and rendering that in the fourth form, deprives the preceding letter of its vowel:

ምሳልዮችን: from ምሳሌ: and **ā**ችን: "our likeness."
በርዖትው: and በረዖትው: "their ox."

D. In those verbs which are called *geminant*, the two identical letters,

D

i.e. second and third radicals, are, in several moods and tenses, contracted into one letter, which letter then is sounded as a double letter:

ቀለለ: "it was light." **ደቀላለ**: for **ደቀላለለ**: "it is light."
ሰደደ: "he sent." **የሚሰድድ**: for **የሚሰድድድ**: "he that sends."

NOTE.—The same change takes place in all languages. Cf. in the English: *refer, referring; compel, compelled; man, manned; stir, stirring; stab, stabbed; &c.* In the Hebrew, letters so contracted receive a compensative Dagesh (cf. **קָדַשׁ**, **קָדַשׁ**); in the Arabic, a Teshdid (حَسَّ, دَبَّ, غَنَّ). In the Abyssinian Languages they have no mark for this gemination; but in pronouncing the contracted syllable, the voice dwells on it for the same length of time as it would on the non-contracted two syllables.

E. The same change takes place in the conjugations of Verbs ending in **ነ**: in the Second Person Plural, and in a few other instances; e.g.

ሆነ: "We became," for **ሆነነ**: **ምነው**: **ማነው**: &c.

3. Elision.

A complete Elision, i.e. ejection without compensation, takes place—

A. At the end of certain words, with letters of the sixth order, which are not, or scarcely, pronounced; e.g. **ሰም**: for **ሰምዕ**: "wax." **ብር**: for **ብርዕ**: "pencil." **እንደ**: "but," for the Eth. and Tig. **እንደደ**:

B. With the **P**: Relative Pronoun, and the **P**: of the Genitive Case, when Prepositions are prefixed to or precede the word; e.g. **ባየኝ**: **በወንድምህ**: **ቤት**: "In the house of thy brother, which I have seen"; instead of **በየኝ**: **በወንድምህ**: **ቤት**: **እንደ**: **ተዘዘህ**: instead of **እንደ**: **የተዘዘህ**: "As thou art commanded."

C. With the Preformatives **እ**: and **ት**: in Verbs and verbal derivations, beginning with **እ**: and **ት**: e.g.

አደርጋለሁ: "I do"; **አሠራለሁ**: "I bind"; **አስጽፋለሁ**: "I order to write"; instead of **አደርጋለሁ**: **አሠራለሁ**: and **አስጽፋለሁ**: **ትቀበላለህ**: "thou receivest"; **ትመታላችሁ**: "you will be beaten"; instead of **ትቀበላለህ**: and **ትትመታላችሁ**:

D. The Preformative **ት**:, with the negative **አ**:, is often suppressed before **ተ**: **ኖ**: **ጠ**: **ጤ**: **ደ**: **ጀ**: **ሰ**: **ሸ**: **ጸ**: and **ፀ**: e.g.

አጽፍ: for **አትጽፍ**: "Do not write."

አጠብቅ: "Do not observe"; &c.

NOTE.—To this rule may be reckoned **ድ**: before **ስ**: in one instance: **ስሳ**: instead of **ስድሳ**: "sixty."

4. *Changes produced and suffered by the letter P: and its corresponding vowels I and Ê.*

Some of those changes have been noticed in the preceding. Here is to be added:

A. **P:** of the sixth order, as preformative to Verbs, resolves into the mere vowel *i*, when any letter of the same order is prefixed; *e.g.*

	instead of		instead of
ሊሰራ:	ሊደሰራ::	ቢመጣ:	ብደመጣ::
እንደሆነ:	እንድደሆነ::	ሲመለስ:	ስደመለስ::
ኪገገር:	ክደገገር::	የሚቆም:	የምደቆም::
እስኪወርሱ:	እስክደወርሱ::	&c.	&c.

B. Under the same circumstances, **P:** not only remains, but, for the sake of assimilation, changes the preceding letter into one of the third order; *e.g.*

ሊደድርገ:: ቢደልቅ:: እንደደወጣ:: &c.

C. The Vowel **I**, when applied, changes the following letters:

Δ: into **P:** :: **W:** and **ሰ:** into **ሸ:** :: **T:** into **ፑ:** :: **I:** into **ፑ:** ::
H: into **ዝ:** :: **ጀ:** into **ጀ:** :: **ጠ:** **X:** and **ፀ:** into **ጪ:** ::

	FOR
ሣደ: "painter"	ሣሊ::
ነጋሽ: "regent"	ነጋሢ::
ምላሽ: "answer"	ምላሲ::
ትመቻለሽ: "thou (f.) wilt be beaten,"	ትመቲአለሽ::
ትድቻለሽ: "thou (f.) wilt be saved,"	ትድኒአለሽ::
ጋዢ: "prince"	ጋዢ::
ወላጅ: "parent"	ወላጂ::
ሳጭ: "giver"	ሳጢ::
ቀራጭ: "piece"	ቀራጺ: or ቀራጢ::
ዐማጭ: "rebel"	ዐማጂ::

NOTE.—Under the same circumstances, **P:** changes those letters into the fourth order.

D. When words ending in *i* and *é* receive any of the heavy suffixes (*gravia*), or the auxiliary **አለ:** at the end, the third or fifth order is generally changed into the sixth, and **P:** follows:

በረ: "ox." በርደኛው: and በረደኛው::

ጠባቂ: "guardian," "protector." ጠባቂዎችን: "our protector."

ተጠብቅዋለሽ: "thou (*fem.*) observest," for **ተጠብቁ: አለሽ::**
ጠብቁዋለሁ: "I observe," for **ጠብቁ: አለሁ::**

E. When letters of the fifth order are shortened, they are changed into the third; when they are prolonged, they are changed into the fourth; and the original vowel *ē* or *i* is represented by **P**::

ሔደ: "he went." Imp. **ሔደ፡** go!

ሺጠ: "he sold."

ተሻየጠ: "he bought and sold," "carried on commerce."

5. *Changes produced and suffered by the Letter **፬**: and its corresponding Vowels U and O.*

The letter **፬**: is often contracted into the vowel *o*, and still further into *û*.

A. **፬**: is contracted into *o*. This occurs,

(a) With the second radical in verbs:

ቀመ: for **ቀፀመ::** **ዘረ:** for **ዘፀረ::** **ጸመ:** for **ጸፀመ:**

(b) In substantives:

ስጥወት: "gift," is contracted into **ስጦት::**

ኞልወት: "power," into **ኞሎት::**

ሕይወት: "life," into **ሕዮት::**

ጸልወት: "prayer," into **ጸሎት::**

B. **፬**: and *o* are further contracted into *û*.

(a) In the subjunctive, imperative, and constructive in verbs:

ይቁም: "let him stand." **ቁም:** "stand!" **ቁምዋል:** "he is standing."

(b) With the suffixed pronoun 3d person sing. masc., which, to nouns ending in a letter belonging to the sixth order, is attached as *û*; but after a long vowel, and in verbs as **፬**., except after an *û*, where it is changed for **ት**::

ቤቱ: "his house."

ጌታው: "his master."

ጠባቂው: "he observed it."

መቶት: "they beat him."

C. *o* and *û*, when an *ā* is joined to them, change the gutturals and palatals into diphthongs of the fourth order, and put other letters into the sixth order, adding **ፑ**::

ብሎ: "his saying."

ብልዋል: "he is saying."

ሰጠሁ: "I gave."

ሰጠኋቸው: "I gave them."

ሸንጎ: "senate."

ሸንጋቸው: "their senate."

D. **ፐ**: having been reduced to the vowel *o* in the radicals of verbs, is restored again when the first radical is amplified:

ተቃወመ: "he stood against," "resisted," from **ቀመ**: "he stood."

6. *Changes occurring with the Diphthongs.*

Diphthongs of the first order (**ቀ**:- **ኡ**: **ከ**:- **ኑ**:-) are, when lengthened, changed into the fourth (**ቋ**: **ኋ**: **ከ**: **ኑ**:); when shortened, into the sixth (**ቀ**:- **ኡ**: **ከ**:- **ኑ**:-) order:

ቀ-ጠረ: "he counted."

Lengthened

ተቋጠረ: "he made accounts."

Shortened

ደቀጠር: "let him count."

7. *Reduplication of Letters.*

Reduplication of letters takes place in the formation of nouns and verbs, generally with a design of giving intensity to the original meaning of the word, when the second or third radical is repeated:

ተናነ: "small."

ተናናነ: "very small."

ተላላቅ: "great."

ተላላቅ: "very great."

መለሰ: "he brought back."

ተመለለሰ: "he walked," *i.e.* "went and returned," "went up and down."

ተመለሰሰ: "he returned."

አደረገ: "he did," "performed."

አደራረገ: "a great work."

8. *Exchange of Letters.*

The following letters are frequently changed one for another, as belonging to the same organ, or at least being similar in sound.

A. *Gutturals*.—**ዐ**: for **አ**:: **አ**: for **ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**:: **ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኀ**: for **ኸ**::

They write:

አረፈ: "he rested," for **ዐረፈ**::

አበቫ: "Abyssinia," for **ሐበቫ**::

አዘነ: "he regretted," for **ሐዘነ**::

አፈረ: "he was ashamed," for **ኀፈረ**::

ሆነ: "he became," for **ኸነ**::

ሔደ: "he went," for **ኸደ**::

ኋላ: "behind," for **ኸላ**::

B. *Gutturals and Palatals*.—**ሀ**: **ሐ**: and **ኸ**: for **ከ**: *e.g.*

ኪድከ: in vulgar language, for **ሔድሀ**: "I go."

ማኸል: and **መኸከል**: for **መካከል**: "the middle."

C. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ቀ**: interchanges occasionally with **ጠ**: **ጪ**: and **ጸ**:: **እንቁት**: for **እንጩት**: "wood."

አስቁጥታቸዋለሁ: for **አስጪጥታቸዋለሁ**: "I will harass them."

Ps. xviii. 38.

D. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ḡ**: and **ḡ**: and **ḡ**:: *e.g.*

አረጀ: “to be old,” for **አረገ**::

ተንጊጊ: for **ተንጽዋዋ**: “to rustle.”

E. *Linguals and Dentals*.—**ላ**: and **ኃ**:: **ሠ**: and **ሰ**:: **ተ**: and **ጥ**::
(**ዘ**: and **ዝ**::) **ዝ**: and **ጀ**:: **ጠ**: and **ጸ**:: **ጸ**: and **ፀ**:: *e.g.*

ልጥር: “pound,” for **ኑጥር**: **ሠመረ**: “to please,” for **ሰመረ**:

ምናልባት: “perhaps,” for **ምናልባት**: **ተባህ**: “to redeem,”
for **ተበጀ**:

ቀ-ረጠ: “to cut,” for **ቀ-ረጸ**: **ጸብ**: “quarrel,” for **ፀብ**:

F. *Linguals and Labials*.—Where **ኃ**: precedes **በ**: **ጸ**: and **ፈ**:, it is, as in the Greek and in other languages, exchanged for **መ**: a liquid of the same order.

እምብልታ: “flute,” for **እንብልታ**:

ወምፈት: “a sieve,” for **ወንፈት**:

ልንጸኔ: “a small tent,” for the Greek *λαμπήνη*.

G. *Labials*.—**መ**: and **በ**:: **መ**: and **ወ**:: **በ**: and **ወ**::

ዝፍም: “rain,” for **ዝፍብ**:

ወንበር: and **ወምበር**: “chair,” for **መንበር**:

ፍረ: “to remain,” (the **ወ**: resolved into the vowel *o*) from the Eth. **ከበረ**:

9. As for the liquids **ላ**: **መ**: **ኃ**: **ረ**: and the changes to which they are liable, they having been embodied in the preceding remarks, nothing further remains to be said concerning them.

10. *Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters.*

Takes place merely in low language.

መርባት: “light,” “candle,” for **መብራት**:

ቅፍቡግ: for **ቅባኑግ**: “nug-oil.”

እዝኔር: for **እግዜር**: contracted from **እግዚአብሔር**: “God.”

ክሶስ: “Christ.” **ክስያን**: and **ኩስታን**: for **ክርስቲያን**: “Christian.”

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

IN the Semitic Languages, it has been the custom (which also Ludolf has followed, in both his Grammars, of the Ethiopic and of the Amharic Languages) to class the different Parts of Speech under three heads; viz. Nouns, Verbs, and Particles; beginning the Etymological part of the Grammar with the Verb, as containing the roots of the whole language. But modern Grammarians have, for important reasons, adopted another course; following the practice of some ancient Arabic and Hebrew Scholars: and as that tripartition presents several inconveniences, especially to such as are unacquainted with the other Semitic Dialects, we divide the Amharic Language into Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections. None of the Abyssinian Languages possess the Article.

2. It will, in a great measure, facilitate the study of the language, before we enter on each part of speech in particular, to premise a few general observations on the original forms of words; because it is in them, and in the manner in which from them the various formations have proceeded, that the peculiarity of every language consists. We must observe, however, that the Amharic not being an original but a derived language (see Introduction, I. III.), we must have frequent recourse to the Ethiopic; and it presents several formations which, in the present state of its knowledge, cannot yet be accounted for.

3. Now the principal elements—as it were the skeleton—of words in any language, consists in the *Consonants*, which are animated by the different Vowels, according to the purposes of formation, flexion, and dialect: and in speaking therefore of original forms, we must look, not to the Vowels, but to the consonants.* This, when applied to the Amharic, where Vowels are constantly attached to Consonants, signifies that the various orders of a letter do not come into consideration, but the letter itself.

4. One characteristic feature of the Semitic Languages is the prevalence

* This is more clear in the Hebrew, Arabic, and Syriac; in which the Vowels are represented by certain marks above and below the line, which are more frequently omitted than written.

of triliteral forms, which are partly derived from original biliterals, and partly amplified to quadri- and pluri-literals; but, for the greater part, are original, and form the majority. This peculiarity applies also to the Abyssinian Languages; although not to the Amharic with equal force, as to its parent, the Ethiopic.

5. We do not intend to enter into any inquiry about the logical priority of the Parts of Speech; although we believe, that, in the natural development of the mind, the Noun has the precedence before the Verb; but in the grammatical formation of the Amharic Language, the Verb claims the priority, since all its roots are reducible to the first order, called Gēēz; i.e. "original." For the sake of convenience, however, we begin with the Noun, and follow the order stated under § 1.

CHAP. I.

ON THE NOUNS.

In speaking of the Nouns, we have to consider them according to their *Formation* (termination, species), *Gender*, *Number*, and *Declension*.

SECTION I.

Formation of Nouns.

1. As to the FORMATION of Nouns, they are either Simple, Augmented, or Compounds; either *Primitive* or *Derived*. Concerning their termination, they may end in any of the seven orders, except the first. We consider them, first, in respect to their *forms*, as simple, augmented, or compound; secondly, to their *formation*, as primitive or derivative.

2. *Simple forms*; consisting of two, three, or four letters.

A. *Biliterals.*

(a) Ending in the second order:

ክፈ:	bad.	ብዙ:	much.	ሞሉ:	full.
ንጹ:	clean.	ብሩ:	clear.	ጽሩ:	pure.
ሠሠ:	covetous, a miser.	ሸቱ:	spices.		

NOTE.—Most of these forms are Ethiopic Verbal Adjectives, originating from, or rather representing, the Passive Participle.

(b) Ending in the third order, generally signifying an agent:

ሰሪ:	workman, diligent.	መሪ:	guide.	ሰፈ:	wide, spacious.
ዘሪ:	sower, seedsman.	ፈቁ:	tanner.	ዘጸ:	ebony.
ንቢ:	the inside.	ንቢ:	current in trade.		

(c) Ending in the fourth order :

ረሳ : a corpse.	ሞያ : rent, wages.	ሸታ : smell.
በደ : emptiness.	ቤዛ : ransom.	በጋ : summer.
ካሳ : equivalent.	ዋዛ : mockery.	ዋጋ : price.
ገላ : body.	ሽማ : cloth.	ጨማ : sole of the foot.
ጮኛ : betrothed.	ውኃ : water.	ደደ : dumb.
ሊባ : thief.	እቃ : vessel, utensil.	ምሳ : dinner.
ማታ : evening.	ሥጋ : flesh.	ረጫ : course.
ሰራ : work.	ቃራ : knife.	

(d) Ending in the fifth order :

ሱሊ : servant.	ሐፄ : the king's majesty.	ቅኔ : poetry.
መሴ : a certain measure.	ሰኔ : June.	ወረ : news.
ቅቤ : butter, oil.	በረ : ox.	ጦሊ : full-grown elephant.
ደዌ : disease.	ጊዜ : time.	ቋረ : garment.
ጥረ : genuine, original.	ፍረ : fruit.	

(e) Ending in the sixth order. These are the most numerous.

ሀር : silk.	ቀን : day.	ቅን : equity.
ላም : cow.	ሆድ : belly.	ሉሊ : pearl.
ልክ : measure.	ልብ : heart.	ሐገ : law.
ሙቀ : warm.	ልጅ : child.	ማር : honey.
ማቅ : coarse woollen cloth.	ሙዝ : banana.	ሣር : grass.
ረዝ : rice.	ሞት : death.	ስም : name.
ሰው : man.	ራብ : hunger.	ሸም : governor.
	ሴት : woman.	ቁስ : priest.

(f) Ending in the seventh order :

ሚሉ : a fillip.	ደቦ : a sort of bread.	ርጎ : curds, cheese.
ደር : hen.	ሢሶ : a third.	ገዛ : a day's march.
ጎጆ : small thatched house.	ጀር : ear.	ኮሶ : cosso (a medicine).
	ቀሉ : fried grain.	

B. *Triliterals.*

(a) Ending in the second order are rare :

ገነኙ : meeting.	ስሙሙ : harmonious.
-----------------------	--------------------------

(b) Ending in the third order, the second letter being generally of the

fourth order. The latter, if their first radical is of the first order, are to be considered as Active Substantives or Adjectives; if of the sixth, as Passive.

ለጊሚ : groom.	ለቃሚ : gatherer.	መሐሪ : merciful.
መካሪ : counsellor.	መጋቢ : steward.	ሰካሪ : drunkard.
በራሪ : flying.	ነደቁ : mason.	ነጋሪ : speaker.
ነጣቁ : rapacious.	ተማሪ : scholar.	አላፈ : passenger, passer-by.

To this class also belong those words whose third letter has been changed from the third to the sixth order. **መለሽ**: "the returner," "restorer"; **ምለሽ**: "answer," "return"; **ቀ-ራጭ**: "cutter"; **ቀ-ራጭ**: "a cut," "piece," &c., for **መለሲ**: **ምለሲ**: **ቀ-ራጢ**: **ቀ-ራጢ**:

(c) Ending in the fourth order:

ለመፍ : entreaty.	ልቡፍ : intellect.	መሐላ : oath.
መንታ : twins.	መራራ : bitter.	መከራ : affliction.
መጸጸ : sour, acid.	መኝታ : sleeping-place.	ሳምባ : the lungs.
ስፍራ : place.	ሸህላ : potter's earth.	ቅረታ : remainder.
ባረዖ : slave.	ተልባ : linseed.	ነቀጣ : a spot.
አለቃ : a chief.	ከፍታ : height.	ወርካ : sycamore-tree.

(d) Ending in the fifth order:

ህላዌ : substance, essence.	ፍጻሜ : perfection.	ምሳሌ : similitude.
ሥላሴ : trinity.	ልባቤ : intellect.	ቅደሚ : Saturday.
ቡራኪ : blessing.	ሰንጸ : wheat.	ከርቤ : myrrh.
ወጠጢ : young he-goat.	ፍሐሴ : August (month).	ዕድሜ : age.
ጀንጾ : cow's hide.	ዛማሬ : song.	ጥያቄ : question.
	ጉማራ : hippopotamus.	

NOTE.—It will be observed, that those Nouns, whose first radical is of the sixth, the second of the fourth, and the third of the fifth order, are generally Abstract Nouns of Quality.

(e) Ending in the sixth order:

α Nouns whose three letters are of the same order, generally denoting essence, quality, action, or concrete substances:

ልብስ : cloth.	ልውጥ : change.	ምንጭ : fountain.
ሕረም : prohibition.	ምርጭ : election.	ስልፍ : war.
ሥእል : image.	ርኩስ : impure.	ብርድ : coldness.
ሸልም : ornament.	ቅቅል : cookery.	አህል : corn.

ተርፍ: remainder.	ንስር: eagle.	ዛምብ: a fly.
ክምር: a heap.	ዕፅፍ: a fold, time, turn.	ጥልቅ: depth.
ድርቅ: dryness.	ግምብ: tower.	ፅንስ: pregnancy,
ጭምር: addition.	ጽምድ: a pair.	fœtus.
ፍርድ: judgment.	ልጥር: a pound.	

β Nouns whose first letter is the first, and the second and third of the sixth order, generally denoting qualities, concrete substantives, or adjectives:

ለምድ: hide.	ለምጽ: leprosy.	መልክ: form.
ረጅም: long.	ቀንድ: horn.	በርድ: cold.
በትር: a stick.	ተክል: a plant.	ነምር: leopard.
አትር: lentils.	ከብት: property.	ወንድ: a male.
ዐምድ: pillar.	ዘውድ: coronet.	ደርቅ: dry land.
ገብስ: barley.	ጸጉር: hair.	ፈትል: thread.

γ Nouns whose first and third letters are of the sixth, and second of the second order. They are of Ethiopic formation, being generally Verbal Adjectives and Substantives, the same as § 2. A. a.

ምዑት: dead.	ርቡዕ: fourth.	ቅቡኝ: anointed.
ቅዱስ: holy.	ብረር: silver.	ተሐት: humble.
ንጉሠ: king.	ንጹሕ: pure.	ንፈገ: avaricious.
እኩል: half, equal.	ወጉዝ: execrated.	ርጉም: cursed.
ዕቡይ: proud.	ዕዑር: blind.	ግረም: majestic.

δ Nouns whose second letter is of the third order. They are of Ethiopic origin, and generally Adjective.

መሪር: bitter.	መጸጽ: sour.	ረቂቅ: thin.
ቀለል: light.	ከቢድ: heavy.	ዓዚዝ: mighty.
ጠቢብ: wise.	ጸቢብ: narrow.	

To the same class belong those Adjectives whose middle letter has been changed from the third into the sixth order:

ቀጭን: "thin"; አጭር: "short"; ረጅም: "long"; instead of ቀጢን: አጸር: ረዛም::

Exceptions are:

ቀለብ: "mould"; ቀሚስ: "shirt"; ነቢይ: "prophet"; ዘቢብ: "grape"; &c.

ε Nouns whose middle letter is of the fourth order. They are generally Substantives, though sometimes Adjectives.

ልማድ: custom.**ልገብ**: halter.**ልጋም**: reins, bridle.**ሐማም**: disease.**ሐካክ**: itch.**ሐፃን**: infant.**መላስ**: tongue.**መካን**: barren.

ζ Nouns whose middle letter is of the fifth order: **ሰሊን**: **ሐሚት**:
መረት ::

η Nouns whose middle letter is of the seventh order: **አሞት** ::

θ Nouns Verbal, ending in the feminine —ት :: They will be mentioned hereafter, when speaking of Derived Nouns.

(f) Nouns ending in the seventh order. They are all Substantives.

ልቅሳ: lamentation.**ምርኮ**: exile.**ምንሾ**: ague.**ምሰሶ**: a pole.**መሰፍ**: a canal.**ሸሐሶ**: wire.**ቀበር**: jackal.**ቀንጂ**: girl, virgin.**በረጃ**: hail.**በቀሉ**: mule.**እርሾ**: leaven.**ከበር**: drum.**ወስፎ**: awl.**ዓውሉ**: tempest.**ዘንጃ**: poisonous**ድርጎ**: a dërgo.**ጎምሶ**: water-jar.

serpent.

ጎርሮ: throat.

C. *Quadriliterals* :

There are none ending in the second order.

(a) Single Nouns ending in the third order. Such as are derived from any derivation of Verbs are not included here.

ሰብሳቢ: gatherer.**ሰንጣቂ**: a cleaver.**ሰንጣቂ**: a split.**በርሳሪ**: a plunderer.

(b) Ending in the fourth order:

መንጋጋ: jaw.**ሠረገላ**: beam, car-**ሸምበራ**: a kind of
pulse.**ሸንግላ**: deceit.

riage.

ደብተራ: a learned
man.**አለንጋ**: a whip.**ኩብኩባ**: grass-
hopper.**ጉልማሳ**: a young
man.**አቆማጃ**: leather bag

(c) Ending in the fifth order:

ልምላሚ: verdure.**ማንትል**: a rabbit.**ረኅራኄ**: clemency.**ሸማገሌ**: an elder.**በርበራ**: Cayenne pep-**ትርጓሚ**: translation.**ደብደቤ**: bill of account.

per.

(d) Ending in the sixth order:

ልምላም: green.**መንጃር**: village.**ምስኪን**: poor.**ምንዝር**: adultery.**ሠልሰል**: chain.**ረገረገ**: mud.

Egziabehêr, or Gabra Amlāk, contr. Gabramlāk, commonly Gabru, or Zāēgziabhêr, or Zāāmlāk, "Servant of God," &c.

(b) From Amharic words, combining either noun with noun, or the noun with any other part of speech:

Compounds.

ገረጅ: left-hand.

ገዛጅ: free-will, liberty.

ባደጅ: empty-handed.

አኔተ: O my Lord!

Analysis.

ገረ: and ገደ::

ገዛ: (dominion?) & ገደ: hand.

ባደ: empty, & ገደ::

የኔ: mine, & ቤተ: Lord, master.

5. *Primitive Nouns*, strictly speaking, are those whose origin cannot be traced to any other source but to themselves. Now there are a good number in the Amharic Language which are easily recognised as Primitive in this sense; but there are many others which can be called so only in a relative acceptation of the word, because in the Ethiopic, from whence they are taken, they are not Primitive; although either the original word is not current in the Amharic, or the mode of its derivation is not accordant with the idiom of that language. The first of these two latter clauses induces us to consider a number of Amharic Nouns as comparatively Primitive; whilst the second constrains us to leave to others the same derivative character which they have in the Ethiopic.

As the Primitive Nouns are found only among the *simple* forms, we refer to the above exhibition, N^o. 2.

A. *Biliterals*:

Class (a) is entirely derivative.

Class (b) also.

Class (c) contains a number of Primitives; *e.g.* ረሳ: በደ: ቤዛ: በጋ: ካሳ: ዋጋ: ገላ: ሸማ: ጫማ: ውጋ: ድጋ: ሥጋ: ነጋ: ማጋ: ድደ: ለገ: ቃረ::

(d) *Primitives* of the fourth class: ሉሉ: ሐዲ: መሴ: ሰኔ: ጊዜ: ጦሉ: ቋረ::

(e) In the fifth class, the majority are Primitives.

(f) In the sixth class, ሚሉ: ደር: ጀር: ጎጂ: ኮሶ: ደሶ::

B. *Triliteral Primitives*:

In class (c), መንጋ: ሳምገ: ሸህላ: ባርያ: ተልገ: ማሸላ: ነቀጣ: ወርካ:

In class (d), ሰንደ: ነሐሴ: ሐምሌ: ጀንደ: ከርቤ: ወወጤ: ፅድማ: ጉማረ:

In class (e), almost the whole of the first (α); about half of the second (β);

ር: filix mas.
 ል: stairs, ladder.
 ክ: God.
 ም: sort of gourds.
 ር: nail.
 ል: k'welqu'äl.
 ር: bedstead.
 ል: yolk of an egg.
 ን: capricorn.
 ር: small elephants' tusk.
 ሞ: unfermented wine.
 ት: obelisk.
 ር: adultery.
 ሞ: inquiry.
 ም: yellow pigeon.
 ል: shrewdness, craftiness.
 ን: moth.
 ር: span.
 ት: back-door.
 ር: acrimonious fruit.

5. ult. ሆ::

ር: a certain quadruped.
 ሞ: flat basket.
 ር: sort of beads.
 ት: tobacco.
 ር: raw flesh.
 ሞ: harp, lyre.
 ሞ: an anthelmintic.
 ሞ: glass.
 ሞ: kind of marmots.
 ሞ: pewter.

1. ult. ሂ::

አርገረሳ: a parasitic plant.
 አንቋቋ: kind of lizards.
 ፍርምቢያ: breast-bone.
 ሙጭልጭል: weasel.

2. ult. ሄ::

ሀረንጊደ: green.
 ንራማይል: a certain bird.

3. ult. ሀ::

አምፍዘልጠ: saddle's crupper.
 አንከሊስ: measles.
 ቀንጥሪት: a small handful.
 ቀርጭምጭሚት: ankle-bone.
 አንድርማሚት: lap-wing.
 ሰልስዋል: glutton.
 ነበልገል: flame.
 አምበላይ: white horse.
 አንቀላል: egg.
 አንክርደድ: a weed.
 መንከሲን: chin.
 መቀለምት: large knife.
 ሰንጠርጅ: game of chess.
 አንቀልፍ: sleep.
 ልክስክስ: light-minded.
 መንከራከር: carriage.
 ቀንጥርጥር: curled hair.
 አምቢያንስም: martingal.

4. ult. ሆ::

አብርጣሞ: sort of plaited hair.
 አንባብር: sort of bread.

none of the third (γ); few of the fourth (δ), **ቃሊብ፡ ታሪክ፡ ቀሚስ፡ አሪዝ፡ ነቢይ፡ ዘቢብ፡**, and fifth (ε), **ልባብ፡ ልጊም፡**; but none of the sixth (ζ) division.

In class (f), the greater part are Primitives.

C. *Quadriliteral Primitives*:

(a) None.

(b) **መንጋጋ፡ ወረገላ፡ ሽምብራ፡ አለንጋ፡ ኩብኩባ፡ ደብተራ፡ አቆማደ፡**

(c) Few; e.g. **መንተሉ፡ በርበረ፡**

(d) The majority.

(e) **መስንቆ፡ ቀርቆር፡ ወደዝር፡ ዝንጀር፡ ደንቆር፡**

D. Those mentioned as simple *pluriliterals* are all Primitive.

6. *Derived Forms* take their origin either from Nouns, Verbs, or Particles; and are formed in various ways, either by *contraction* (elision), or by *change*, or by *augmentation* of their letters.

A. By *Contraction* (see Part I. Ch. VII. 2.), and *Elision* (ibid. 3.), they are changed more seldom within the limits of the Amharic than in their transition from the Ethiopic Language into the Amharic. It takes place most frequently in Biliterals:

Amh.	Eth.	Amh.	Eth.
ንጹ፡ pure,	from ንጹሕ፡	ምሳ፡ dinner,	from ምሳሕ፡
በረ፡ ox,	.. ብዕራይ፡	ላም፡ cow,	.. ላህም፡
መር፡ honey,	.. መሣር፡	ሣር፡ grass,	.. ሣዕር፡
ቅቤ፡ butter, oil,	.. ቅብእ፡	sometimes Amharic.	

Sometimes in Triliterals, derived from the Ethiopic Quadriliterals:

Amh.	Eth.	Amh.	Eth.
ብርቱ፡ strong,	from ብርቱዕ፡	ስሙሙ፡ harmonious,	
ባሕሪ፡ essence,	.. ባሕርይ፡	from ስሙዕሙዕ፡	

B. By *change* of one, two, or of all the primitive letters, according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 4, 5, 7. A few instances will suffice for illustration:

Derivative.	Primitive.
ቀደም፡ that which is before,	} from ቀደም፡ the former time.
ቀደሚ፡ saddle's pommel,	
ቀደሚ፡ Saturday,	
ቅደስ፡ holy,	} from ቀደስ፡ to sanctify.
ቅደሰ፡ consecration,	
ቀደሽ፡ sanctifier,	

Derivative.

Primitive.

መለሽ : a restorer,	} from መለሰ : to return, bring back.
ምለሽ : return, answer,	
ምሳሌ : likeness,	} from መሰለ : to resemble.
ምሳይ : kind, resemblance,	
ንጉሠ : king,	} from ንገሠ : to be king.
ነጋሽ : regent,	
አደኝ : hunter,	} from አደኝ : to hunt.
አደን : game,	

C. *Augmentation* of letters in the derivation of Nouns takes place either in the *beginning* (preformation), or in the *middle* (reduplication), or at the *end* (afformation).* The letters used for this purpose are **መ**: **ሰ**: **ጥ**: **ኔ**: **ፑ**: **አ**: **ወ**: **ያ**:: Of these, **መ**: **ሰ**: **ጥ**: **ኔ**: **አ**: **ወ**: **አሰ**: and **አሰጥ**: are *prefixed*; and **መ**: **ጥ**: **ኔ**: **ፑ**: **ወ**: and **ያ**: are *affixed*. *Reduplication* takes place by repeating any of the radical letters.

(a) *Preformation*:

መ: is used for Infinitives, and retained in Nouns derived therefrom:

መጠበቅ: the watching.

መጠበቅያ: watch-house, from **ጠበቅ**: to watch.

ጥ: **ጥን**: **አ**: **አሰ**: **አሰጥ**: and **አን**: are retained in Nouns derived from those derivations of Verbs which have these characteristic Preformatives:

Noun.	Verbal derivation.	Radix.
ጥናጋሪ : speaker.	ጥናገረ : to speak.	ነገረ : to say, tell.
ጥንቀጥቃጭ : trembler.	ጥንቀጠቀጠ : to tremble.	ቀጠቀጠ : to bruise.
አፍራሽ : breaker.	አፈረሰ : to break.	ፈረሰ : to burst.
አሰታማማ : nurse for sick persons.	አሰታመመ : to nurse sick persons.	አመመ ::
አንቫታኝ : cheater.	አንቫተተ : to cheat.	ቫተተ : (non occ.)

አ: is prefixed to Verbs, and one of the radical letters doubled; e.g.

አገባብ: **አቀማመጥ**: **አደራረግ**::

ጥ: and **ጥ**: are prefixed to Verbs to form Nouns of action; e.g.

ጥዕገሥት: **ጥምሕርት**::

Sometimes the **አ**: or **ጥ**: is cut off, and **ኔ**: retained in these Preformatives:

* This is analogous to the Hebrew **יְהַמְמִיץ** and the Arabic **يَسْمِنُ** Nouns.

Noun.	Verbal Derivation.	Radix.
ነጉደጊድ : thunder.	አንጉደጉድ : to thunder.	ጉደጉድ : Eth. to beat.
ነጠብጣብ : a drop.	ተንጠበጠበ : to drop.	ጠበጠበ : to trot.

ፀ: occasionally interchanges with the **ሀ**: of the Infinitive, the Noun being considered no longer as an Infinitive: *e.g.*

ፀምበር: (or **ፀንበር**): chair. **ሀምበር**: the sitting, (Eth.)
ነበረ: to sit.

ፀምፈት: (for **ሀምፈት**:) or **ፀንፈት**: "sieve"; from **ነፈ**: to blow, to fan, to make wind.

(b) *Reduplication*; repetition of any of the radical letters:

Derivative.	Primitive.
ተናኸ : very small.	ተናኸ : small.
ተላላቅ : very great.	ተላቅ : great.
ሀልላካም : very beautiful.	ሀልላካም : fine, beautiful.

In Verbal Nouns, which take it from the Verb, Reduplication is retained:

Nouns.	Verbal Derivation.	Radix.
ተሀላላሽ : walker.	ተሀላላሰ : to walk.	ሀላሰ : to return.

Reduplication with transposition:

ተረጎረ: doubt. **ተጠራጠረ**: to doubt. **ጠረረ**:

(c) *Affirmation* of the letters **ሀ**: **ተ**: **ነ**: **ኘ**: **ዊ**: and **ያ**:

α The Affirmation of **ሀ**: to Substantives, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Fulness, Intensity, &c., similar to the Latin *osus*, and English *ous* and *ful*; *e.g.*

Form in <i>am</i> .	Origin.
ሀልላካም : beautiful (<i>formosus</i>).	ሀልክ : form.
ሀደም : glutton (man of a large stomach).	ሀድ : belly.
ፍርዖም : fertile.	ፍረ : fruit.
ወፍራም : thick.	ወፍረ : thickness.

β Affirmative **ማ**: forms Substantives:

አይጥማ : mouse-coloured mule.	አይጥ : mouse.
ወሽማ : fornicator.	ወሽ : dog.

γ The Affirmative **ተ**: **ät**, **et**, **it**, **itu**, **ät**, **lä**, produces feminine forms:

Form in ተ :	Origin.
ልደት : birth.	ወለደ : to bring forth.
ትምህርት : doctrine.	ተማረ : to learn.
ንጹሕት : (<i>fem.</i>) pure.	ንጹሕ : (<i>masc.</i>) pure.
ልጅቱ : daughter.	ልጅ : son.
ፍርሃት : fear.	ፈረ : (Eth. ፈርሀ :) to be afraid.
ቅረታ : remainder.	ቀረ : to remain, to be left.
ዝቅታ : lowness.	ዝቅ : low.

δ The Afformative **ኣ**: **ኣን**: forms Substantives of Quality, from Verbs which in Latin frequently answer those ending in *tas*, in English in *ty*:

Forms in *ān*.

ሠልጣን: authority.

ብርሃን: light, clarity.

ከደን: covenant.

ቅልጣን: delicacy, vanity.

ቀርባን: offering, eucharist.

Verbs.

ሠለጠ & **ሠለጠኑ**: to have authority.

በረ: Eth. **በርሃ**: to be light or clear.

ከደ: **ተከደ**::

ቀለጠ: to melt.

ቀ-ረበ: to take the sacrament.

Exceptions are, **ጉንደን**: “ant”; and **ጉምፋን**: “cough.”

ε **ፍ**: and **ነት**: are affixed to Adjectives, Substantives, and Particles, in order to form Abstract Substantives; generally answering our *ence*, *ance*, *ness*, *cy*, *ty*, *hood*, and *ship*.

Forms in **ፍ**: and **ነት**::

ልቡፍ: intelligence, sagacity.

ልዕልፍ: highness.

ልዩነት: difference, variety.

ልጅነት: childhood, sonship.

ልፃንነት: infancy.

መልካምነት: beauty, goodness.

መምህርነት: teachership.

ቅድስፍ: holiness.

እውነተኝነት: veracity.

አስማተኝነት: witchcraft.

Radices.

ልብ: heart, mind.

ልዕል: (Eth.) high.

ልዩ: different, various.

ልጅ: child, son.

ልፃን: infant.

መልካም: beautiful, good.

መምህር: teacher.

ቅዱስ: holy.

እውነተኛ: true.

አስማተኛ: sorcerer.

ζ The Afformative **ኘ**: is affixed to Nouns, to form Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, or Quality.

Forms in **ኘ**:

ሀኪተኘ: lazy, an idler.

መርከበኘ: sailor.

They often assume a **ተ**: before the **ኘ**:

በራተኘ: labourer.

አምቢተኘ: refractory.

Radices.

ሀኪት: idleness.

መርከብ: ship.

በራ: work, labour.

አምቤ: I will not.

η The Ethiopic Afformative **ኦ**: is affixed to Nouns Substantive with the same effect as those formed by the Afformative **ኘ**:: They, besides, form Gentile Nouns.

Form in **ኦ** **ኦ**::

ወንጌላዊ: evangelist.

Radix.

ወንጌል: gospel.

θ The letter **ያ**: is affixed,

ς To *Infinitives*, to form Nouns of Agency, Instrumentality, Locality, Object, &c.; whereby it must be observed, that when the letter to which it is

AUGMENTED FORMS.

1. By Affirmatives.

to Substantives and Adjectives, denoting fulness.

ሞ: beautiful.

ሥ: fruitful.

ጡ: gluttonous.

to Simple Roots, forming Substantives.

የ: a certain fever.

ሥ: stallion.

ዋ: fornicator.

ሣ: ash-coloured (*lit.* mouse-coloured) mule.

AT, ET, IT, UT, ት: and **ታ**: Feminine Forms.

ታ: birth, nativity.

ፍ: (**ፍልወት**) power.

ሐ: boasting, glorying.

ፈ: (**ፈጅቱ**) daughter.

ታ: majesty.

ታ: fear.

ታ: fornication.

ፍ: the rest, remainder.

ፍ: lowness.

ታ: gift.

to Simple Roots, forms Substantives of Essence (Concrete substantives), Power, Quality.

ሐ: authority, privilege.

ሐ: light, clarity.

ሐ: covenant, treaty.

ሐ: infant.

ሐ: delicacy.

ሐ: offering, eucharist.

ሐ: ant.

ሐ: coughing, a cold.

(e) **ፍ**: and **ት**: to Substantives, Adjectives, and Particles, form Abstract Substantives of Quality, State, &c.

ልቡፍ: intelligence, prudence.

ልዕልፍ: highness, elevation.

ዝምጅፍ: relationship.

ልዩት: difference, variety.

ልጅት: sonship.

መልካምት: goodness, beauty.

እውነትንት: verity.

እምላካዊት: divine nature.

f. **ፍ**: to Nouns and Particles, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, and Quality.

ሀኪትፍ: idler.

መርከበፍ: navigator, sailor.

Often assumes **ፍ**:

እዘንትፍ: mournful.

ሰራትፍ: workman, labourer.

እምቢትፍ: unwilling.

(g) **āwi**, with the same effect as the preceding.

ወንጌላዊ: evangelist.

ፈሪሳዊ: Pharisee.

ፍረንሳዊ: French.

(h) **ፆ**: expressed or implied, forms Nouns of Instrumentality, Agency, Locality, Object, Individuality.

α To Infinitives.

ማሠርፆ: a tie.

መለኪፆ: measuring instrument.

መላገጅ: object of scorn.

β To Simple Roots.

ቅምፆ: spoil, booty.

ቅምሽ: bit, morsel, taste.

ጽርጊፆ: rubbish, sweepings.

to be joined, is one of those changeable Linguals or Dentals mentioned in Part I. Ch. VII. 4 c., both **P**: and the letter to which it was to be joined, are dropped, and exchanged for such a cognate Lingual or Dental as combines the joint sounds. (See the above-mentioned paragraph.)

Forms with **P**:, the **P**: being either expressed or implied.

መለኪያ: measure.

መለገጅ: object, means of scorn.

ማለፍ: passage, excellent.

መፋተም: printing-office.

መመለሻ: place, or means of returning.

ማሠር: a tie, band, bond.

Infinitives.

መለክ: the measuring.

መለገድ: the scorning.

ማለፍ: the passing.

መፋተም: the printing.

መመለስ: the returning.

ማሠር: the binding.

☐ To Simple Roots, with the same object and in the same manner as to Infinitives:

Forms with **P**:

ቅም: booty.

ቅምሻ: a bit, taste.

ጉትቻ: trail, train.

ጽርጊ: rubbish.

Roots.

ቀማ: to plunder.

ቅምስ: the tasting.

ጉትት: the dragging.

ጽርገ: sweeping.

SECTION II.

On the Species of Nouns.

1. Nouns are to be considered, either as *Substantives*, names of things, or as *Adjectives*, names of properties. In the Amharic, as in the other Semitic Languages, they both belong together; and they have been jointly treated in the preceding Section as to their Formation. It remains now to say a few words concerning the Adjectives.

2. As to their Formation, but few of them, as the preceding Tables show, are *original*: such are,

በጎ: good.

ጀህፍ: well.

እሙሉ: bad.

ሞላላ: oblong.

ደገሳ: prominent.

እርጌ: old.

Even these are but primarily Adjectives; and when isolated, may be, and are, used as Substantives. Most Adjectives are of derivative forms, being derived either from Verbs (see Table II.) or from Substantives; e.g.

ገረም: ለዋቁ: መረር: መልክኛ: መልካም: አሳዊ::

Participial Adjectives, **ሞላገር**: **የተመነ**::

3. As for Comparison, the Amharic Language, like the Hebrew, has no

Adjective form to express the Comparative or Superlative: we therefore must defer this subject to the Syntax.

4. The Numeral Nouns will be treated in a separate chapter.

We now proceed to the consideration of the *Gender* of the Nouns.

SECTION III.

On the Gender of the Nouns.

1. The Amharic Nouns have but two *Genders*, Masculine and Feminine. We shall endeavour to point out a few general rules, showing what Nouns belong to either of the two genders, and by which forms they are to be recognised. We have to complain, however, that there is yet much confusion; both masculine and feminine forms being alternately applied to words where the sex is not palpably distinguished.

A. Masculine are:

(a) The names of God, angels, and men; also the names of nations, and of all male animals:

እግዚአብሔር: God.	ሰይጣን: Satan.	ዓረብ: an Arab.
the Lord.	ገብርኤል: Gabriel.	ህበሺ: an Abyssinian.
አምላክ: God.	ሰው: man.	ፍረንሲስ: a Frenchman.
የሱስ: Jesus.	ዮሐንስ: John.	አንበሳ: a lion.
መልአክ: angel.		

(b) The names of the sun and the stars, of ranks and offices of men:

ፀሐይ: sun.	ሹም: governor.	ጠባቂ: guardian.
ኮከብ: star.	ገዢ: ruler.	ሉሊ: servant.

B. Feminine are:

The names of women and female animals; the names of the moon, the earth, countries, towns, &c.; plants; the names of female ranks and offices; collective names; and the names of several abstracts:

ማርያም: Mary.	ከተማ: city, camp.	ወደዘር: princess, lady.
ደር: hen.	መንደር: village.	እመቤት: mistress.
ዉረቆ: moon.	ጎንደር: Gondar.	ገረድ: female servant.
ምድር: earth, country.	ዛፍ: tree.	ጉባኤ: assembly, society.
ሐበሻ: Abyssinia.	እበባ: a flower.	

And see 2.

C. Common, are several conditions of life; as, "child," "slave," and others, where the termination of the word does not distinguish the sex.

2. The two Genders are distinguished,

(a) By the addition of distinct words denoting the Male and the Female. These are: **ወንድ**: and **ተባት**: for Males, and **ሴት**: and **አንስት**: for Females: besides this, **አውራ**: for several male animals, who are without this distinction considered as females; as, goats, fowl, &c.: *e. g.*

ወንድ: **ልጅ**: a son, boy.

ሴት: **ልጅ**: a daughter, girl.

የንስሳ: **ተባት**: male of animals. **የንስሳ**: **አንስት**: female of animals.

አውራ: **ፍያል**: he-goat.

አውራ: **ደር**: cock (he-fowl).

In Shoa, they carry this distinction further; calling "clayish earth" **ወንድ**: or **ተባት**: **ምድር**: (male earth), and "loose earth" **አንስት**: or **ሴት**: **ምድር**: (female earth). They call wood which splits perpendicularly, **ወንድ**: **እንጨት**: "male wood"; and wood which splits transversely, **ሴት**: **እንጨት**: "female wood." Maria-Theresa dollars, which have the requisite coinage, **አንስት**: **ብር**: "female dollars"; and those which are any way deficient, being M. T. dollars, **ተባት**: **ብር**: "male dollars." The latter distinction obtains in all Abyssinia.

(b) The Female is distinguished by the termination **ት**: **ታ**: and **ቱ**:: (See the Table of Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(c) The same by **ፍ**: and **ነት**: (See Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(d) The Primitives are mostly *Masculines*.

(e) As to the Derivative forms, the following rule obtains:

Classes I. 1. 2. 3. 6. and II. 4. *f. g.* are predominantly Masculine; and Classes I. 4. and II. 4. *c. d. e.* predominantly Feminine. The rest are of Mixed Gender.

3. The remaining Nouns are undetermined as to the sex; the Adjective and Verb being promiscuously applied to them in the Masculine and in the Feminine Gender.

4. Several Adjectives and Substantives, whose form is Masculine, are changed into a Feminine form:

Masculine.

ንጹ:

ብሩ:

ግሩም:

ጠባቂ:

አርጌ:

ወራሽ: heir.

ሀኪተኛ:

አረማዊ: heathen man.

Feminine.

ንጹሕት: pure.

ብርሀት: clear.

ግሩምት: wonderful.

ጠባቂቱ: guardian.

አርጌት: old.

ወራሽቱ: heiress.

ሀኪተኛቱ: lazy.

አረማዊት: heathen woman.

SECTION IV.

On the Number of the Nouns.

1. The *number* is but twofold; viz. *Singular* and *Plural*. We might add the *Collective*; but that being considered either as a body, when it is Singular, or as an aggregate of individuals, when it is plural, it constitutes no particular form; and we therefore proceed to consider these two, the Singular and the Plural; there being no Dual in this language.

2. As the Singular is that form in which each Noun, before it is changed, presents itself, we need not say any thing about it, but direct our attention at once to the formation of the *Plural* Number.

3. The truly Amharic Plural is very simple; it has but one form, and that is the termination *otsh* (Tigrê *ot*); in which we recognise the Hebrew ות , the Arabic ون , and the Ethiopic *āt*; e.g.

Singular.	Plural.
ቤት: house.	ቤተኝ: houses.
ወብ: dog.	ወቦኝ: dogs.
ልጅ: child.	ልጆኝ: children.
አባት: father.	አባቶኝ: fathers.
ጠባቂ: guardian.	ጠባቂኝ: guardians.
በጎ: good.	በጎኝ: good.

NOTE.—The Plural termination of several Nouns ending in the fifth order is divided into two Consonants; the original letter being put into the sixth order, and a *P*: being added, to which the Plural *ኝ*: is affixed; e.g.

ምስልፆኝ: similitudes, from ምስሌ::

4. But besides this Amharic, we have the following Ethiopic Plural forms; which sometimes are applied, although the true Amh. Plural always may be put.

(a) Termination *ān*.

For the Derivates, I. 1. II. 4. *g*. and some other forms; e.g.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
ቅዱስ: holy.	ቅዱሳን: saints.	ፈሪሳዊ: Pharisee.	ፈሪሳውያን:
ጠበቃ: wise.	ጠበቃን::	ጎጥኦ: sinner.	ጎጥኦን:
ሕያው: living.	ሕያዋን::	ነጃይ: poor.	ነጃያን::
ሙት: dead.	ሙታን::	መምህር: teacher.	መምህራን::

NOTE.—Irregular: አይሁዳዊ: "Jew." አይሁድ: "Jews."

(b) Termination *āt*.

The Feminines of the Plural Adjectives in *ān*.

ቅዱሳት: ነጃያት: ቡረካት: ሕያዋት::

The Derivative forms terminating in *ān*.

ሥልጣን: authority. **ሥልጣናት**:: **ብርሃን**: light. **ብርሃናት**: lights.

ሕፃን: infant. **ሕፃናት**: infants.

Besides these :

Singular.

ሰማይ: heaven.

ደመና: cloud.

ፈጽል: letter.

ቃል: word.

ምሥጢር: secret.

Plural.

ሰማያት: heavens.

ደመናት: clouds.

ፈጽላት: letters.

ቃላት: words.

ምሥጢራት: secrets.

Some forms ending in the fifth order :

ምሳሌ: likeness.

ጊዜ: time.

ምሳሌያት: likenesses.

ጊዜያት: times.

Words ending in the servile **ት** ::

አመት: year.

ሰማዕት: martyr.

አምታት: years.

ሰማዕታት: martyrs.

Other forms :

ሐዋርያ: apostle.

ንፋስ: wind.

ሕግ: law.

ቤት: house.

ካህን: priest.

ጳጳስ: metropolitan.

ኢጲስቆጶስ: bishop.

ዲያቆን: deacon.

ሐዋርያት: apostles.

ንፋሳት: winds.

ሕጎች: laws.

አብያት: houses.*

ካህናት: priests.

ጳጳሳት: metropolitans.

ኢጲስቆጶሳት: bishops.

ዲያቆናት: deacons.

(c) Form **አገበር**::

አገር: village.

አህጉር: villages.

(d) From **አግባር**::

ወትር: string.

ሕዝብ: people.

ሶፍ: bird.

ዐምድ: pillar.

አውታር: strings.

አሕዛብ: people.

አዕዋፍ: birds.

አእማድ: pillars.

(e) **ገባሪት**::

Singular.

አርፎ: wild.

ሠርፎ: beam.

Plural.

አራዊት: wild beasts.

ሠራዊት: army.

* Used only in **አብያት**: **ክርስቲያናት**: "Churches," from **ቤት**: **ክርስቲያን**: "a Church."

(f) አጋብርት::

ቂስ: priest.

መንፈስ: spirit.

አንበሳ: lion.

መከ-ነን: judge.

ከንፈር: lip.

ኮከብ: star.

አምላክ: God.

ነምር: leopard.

መልአክ: angel.

መስኮት: window.

ሊቅ: chief.

ቦቅሎ: mule.

ጋኔን: demon.

ቀሳውስት: priests.

መናፍስት: spirits.

አናብስት: lions.

መኳንንት: judges.

ከናፍር: lips.

ከዋክብት: stars.

አማልክት: gods.

አናምርት: leopards.

መላእክት: angels.

መሳኮት: windows.

ሊቃውንት: chiefs.

ቦቅሎች: and አባቅልተች: mules.

አጋንንት: demons.

Rare forms:

ንጉሥ: king.

ሞነኩሴ: monk.

ነገሥት: and ነገሥታት: kings.

ሞናክሶች: ሞናኩስት: & ሞነኳኩስት: monks.

5. It is well to attend to these various forms, as they frequently occur in the Amharic Bible as well as in conversation: but it must be borne in mind, that they are all of Ethiopic origin, and superseded by the simple Amharic form *otsh*; and a beginner will never be mistaken in using the latter, until he is sufficiently acquainted with the language to know where he has to apply any of the other forms.

SECTION V.

On the Declension of the Nouns.

The Declension of Nouns is very simple and uniform. Nouns are inflected through four Cases, equally in the Singular and the Plural, *i.e.* the Nominative, the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative. One example may suffice to show the whole mode of proceeding:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ቤት: a house.	ቤቶች: houses.
Gen.	የቤት: of a house, a house's.	የቤቶች: of houses.
Dat.	ለቤት: to a house.	ለቤቶች: to houses.
Acc.	ቤትን: a house.	ቤቶችን: houses.

OBSERVATIONS:

(a) The Genitive answers the Eth. **H**., and is not to be confounded with the Pronouns Relative or Distributive.

The Accusative Case must not be confounded with the Interrogative Adverb **ን**; nor with the termination **ን**: of Nouns. On the Construction, and on the various uses of the Accusative, see Syntax.

2. It occasionally happens, that they make use of the Ethiopic Genitive or *status constructus*, i.e. that mode of construction which prevails in the Hebrew, and which has been noticed in the First Section of this Chapter, § 4. The two nouns, which stand in a genitive relation to each other, one of which is the *regens* (Nominative), and the other the *rectum* (Genitive), are so closely connected as to appear as one word. The Genitive follows the Nominative, and receives the tone or accent; in doing which, the preceding Noun, the Nominative, is modified: in the Hebrew it is shortened: in our case, the last letter, if it is of the sixth order, is changed into the first, and the two words are considered as one compound, separated merely by the (:) colon; but even this, in the Amharic, is often dropped, especially when the Genitive begins with a vowel consonant, or when it is a short word:

ባል: ቤት: and **ባልቤት:** “master of the house.”

ባለጃ: for **ባል: ዕጃ:** “owner of debts,” i.e. “creditor” or “debtor.”

Another change is produced by the affixion of Pronouns to Nouns, of which we shall speak under the head of Inseparable Pronouns.

CHAP. II.

ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numerals are of two kinds, *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*. The Cardinals specify the number of things which are the subject of speech: the Ordinals exhibit the order in which they occur.

2. The *Cardinal Numbers* in the Amharic are as follow:

Cipher.	Amharic.	English.	Cipher.	Amharic.	English.
፩:	1. { አንድ: } { ፊ. አንዲት: }	One, a, an.	፲:	30. ሠላሳ:	Thirty.
፪:	2. ሁለት:	Two.	፴:	40. { አርባ: or } { አርብዓ: }	Forty.
፫:	3. ሶስት:	Three.	፶:	50. አምስት:	Fifty.
፬:	4. አራት:	Four.	፷:	60. ስድሳ: or ስሳ:	Sixty.
፭:	5. አምስት:	Five.	፸:	70. ሰባ: or ሰብዓ:	Seventy.
፮:	6. ስድሳት:	Six.	፹:	80. ስማንያ:	Eighty.
፯:	7. ሰባት:	Seven.	፺:	90. ዘጠፍ:	Ninety.
፰:	8. ስምንት:	Eight.	፻:	100. መቶ:	Hundred.
፱:	9. ዘጠኝ:	Nine.	፲፱:	1000. ሺህ:	Thousand.
፲:	10. አሥር:	Ten.	፻፱:	10000. አልፍ:	Ten Thousand.
፳:	20. ህያ:	Twenty.			

Compound Cardinals.

፫፩: 11. አሥራ: አንድ:	Eleven.	፫፮: 16. አሥራ: ስድስት:	Sixteen.
፫፪: 12. አሥራ: ሁለት:	Twelve.	፫፯: 17. አሥራ: ሰባት:	Seventeen.
፫፫: 13. አምራ: ሶስት:	Thirteen.	፫፰: 18. አሥራ: ስምንት:	Eighteen.
፫፬: 14. አሥራ: አራት:	Fourteen.	፫፱: 19. አሥራ: ዘጠኝ:	Nineteen.
፫፭: 15. አሥራ: አምስት:	Fifteen.		

The same order is observed with all the Tenth, to a Hundred; *e.g.*

ህያ: አንድ:: ሥላሳ: ሁለት:: አርባ: ሶስት: &c.

The numbers upward of a Hundred are joined to the Hundreds by **ከ**: or **ት**:; *e.g.*

፫፯፮: 106. መቶ: ከስድስት:: One hundred and six.

፫፯፮: 160. መቶ: ተስሳ: or መቶ: ከስሳ: One hundred and sixty.

፫፱፱: 199. መቶ: ከዘጠኝ: ዘጠኝ:: One hundred & ninety-nine.

፪፫፱: 200. ሁለት: መቶ: Two hundred.

፲፰፻፩: 1841. ሺህ: ተስምንት: መቶ: ካርባ: አንድ: or አሥራ: ስምንት: መቶ: ካርባ: አንድ: One Thousand Eight Hundred and Forty-one.

3. The *Ordinal* Numbers are formed by the termination **ኛ**: affixed to the *Cardinals*.

አንደኛ:: መጀመርያ: } the First.
or **ፈተኛ::**

ሁለተኛ: the Second.

ሶስተኛ: the Third.

አራተኛ: the Fourth.

አምስተኛ: the Fifth.

ስድስተኛ: the Sixth.

ሰባተኛ: the Seventh.

ስምንተኛ: the Eighth.

ዘጠኝኛ: and ዘጠነኛ: the Ninth.

አሥረኛ: the Tenth.

አሥራ: ሁለተኛ: the Eleventh.

&c. &c.

The Simple Numbers, Twenty, Thirty, and upwards, scarcely admit of the termination **ኛ**:, but are generally given to the Cardinal form. In compounds, the last number receives the termination **ኛ**;; as,

ህያ: አንደኛ: ምዕራፍ: the Twenty-first chapter.

4. They have no particular form for the Distributive Numbers; but they express them, either by reiteration, as,

አንድ: አንድ: (contr. **አንደንድ:**) one-by-one, some, several, one or other; singly, severally.

ሁለት: ሁለት: two-and-two;

Or by **አዋ**: or **አዋ**: as,

አያንደንድ: each, every. **አሁልት**: by twos, by pairs, two-and-two, every two, every couple, &c. &c.

በየሶስት ቀን: every three days.

CHAP. III.

ON THE PRONOUNS.

1. The Amharic *Pronouns* are, as to their *logical* character, divided, as in other languages, into, 1. Personal; 2. Possessive; 3. Demonstrative; 4. Relative; 5. Interrogative; 6. Reflective; and 7. Distributive Pronouns. As to their *forms*, they are classed, as in other Semitic Languages, into Separable and Inseparable Pronouns. We begin with the *Separable Pronouns*. They are Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, and Reflective.

SECTION I.

Separable Personal Pronouns.

They are Three for the Singular, and Three for the Plural. The Singular has some peculiarities. The First Person has not the Gender expressed: the Second and Third have distinct forms for the Masculine and for the Feminine Gender: the Second Person has, besides, three distinctions of honour, as the following Paradigm shows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Com.	Fem.	Com.		
1 Pers.		አኔ: I.		አኛ: we.		
2 Pers.	አንተ:		አንት: አንቺ: }	} thou.	አላንተ: you.	
		አንቱ: አርሰዋ: }	} you.			
3 Pers.	እርሱ: he, it.		እርሷ: she, it.	እርሳቸው: they.		

NOTE. (a) On the application of the three different forms for the Second Person: **አንተ**: and **አንቺ**: are applied to inferiors, to God, to intimate friends; and in universal address, where you need not pay any regard to rank, &c. **አንቱ**: is used for a *lesser*; **አርሰዋ**: for a *higher* degree of honour. These two forms resemble the German *Ihr* (in Switzerland *Er*), and *Sie*, and the Italian *Voi* and *Lei*, for the Second Person Singular.

(b) In speaking of a *distinguished* person, the form of the Third Person Plural is used, as a mark of honour.

2. The Declension is the same as with the Nouns.

1st Pers.	SINGULAR.				
	2d Pers.		3d Pers.		
	Com.	Com.	Masc.	Fem.	
N. እኔ : I.	እንት :: እንት : thou.	እንቶ :: እርሰዎ : you.	እርሱ : he, it.	እርሷ : she, it.	
G. ዋኔ : { of me, my, mine.	ዋንት :: ዋንት : { of thee, thy, thine.	ዋንቶ :: ዋርሰዎ : { of you, your, yours.	ዋርሱ : { of him, it, his, its.	ዋርሷ : { of her, her, hers, its.	
D. ለኔ : to me, me.	ለንት :: ለንቶ : to thee, thee.	ለንቶ :: ለርሰዎ : to you, you.	ለርሱ : { to him, him, it.	ለርሷ : { to her, her, it.	
A. እኔን : me.	እንታን :: እንታን : thee.	እንታን :: እርሰዎን : you.	እርሱን : him, it.	እርሷን : her, it.	

	PLURAL.		
	2 Pers.		3 Pers.
	1 Pers.	2 Pers.	3 Pers.
Nom. እኛ : we.	እላንት : ye, you.	እርሳቸው :: they.	
Gen. ዋኛ : of us, our, ours.	ዋላንት :: of you, your, yours.	ዋርሳቸው :: of them, their, theirs.	
Dat. ለኛ : to us.	ለላንት :: to you.	ለርሳቸው :: to them.	
Acc. እኛን : us.	እላንትን : you.	እርሳቸውን :: them.	

Thus far the Separable Personal Pronouns. The Inseparable Personal Pronouns are those Verbal Suffixes which will be mentioned in their proper place.

SECTION II.

Separable Possessive Pronouns.

They are formed by the Genitive of the Personal Pronouns; and are as follows:

Singular.	Plural.
PḲ: my, mine.	PḲ: our, ours.
PḲṯ: <i>m.</i> PḲṯ: <i>f.</i> thy, thine.	PḲṯ: your, yours.
PḲṯ: <i>m.</i> PḲṯ: <i>f.</i> your, yours.	
PḲṯ: <i>m.</i> his. PḲṯ: <i>f.</i> her, hers.	PḲṯ: their, theirs.

SECTION III.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

They are two in number; one for near, and one for remote objects.

1. *Demonstrative for Near Objects.*

ḲḲ: *masc.* **ḲḲ:** or **ḲḲ:** *fem.* "This."

Shoa Dialect: **ḲḲ:** *masc.* **ḲḲ:** *fem.*

DECLENSION.

COMMON FORM, IRREGULAR.

	Masc.		SINGULAR.		Fem.
Nom.	ḲḲ:		ḲḲ:	contr.	ḲḲ: this.
Gen.	PḲḲ:		PḲḲ:	..	PḲḲ: of this.
Dat.	ḲḲ:		ḲḲ:	..	ḲḲ: to this.
Acc.	ḲḲ: & ḲḲ:		ḲḲ:	..	ḲḲ: this.
			PLURAL.		
			Common Gender.		
Nom.	ḲḲ:	or	ḲḲ:	contr.	ḲḲ: these.
Gen.	PḲḲ:	..	PḲḲ:	..	PḲḲ: of these.
Dat.	ḲḲ:	..	ḲḲ:	..	ḲḲ: to these.
Acc.	ḲḲ:	..	ḲḲ:	..	ḲḲ: these.

SHOA FORM, REGULAR.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Common.
N.	ḲḲ:	ḲḲ: this.	ḲḲ: or ḲḲ:
G.	PḲḲ:	PḲḲ: of this.	contr. ḲḲ: &c. the same as above,
D.	ḲḲ:	ḲḲ: to this.	but the Ḳ: prevailing throughout.
A	ḲḲ:	ḲḲ: this.	

ANOTHER REGULAR FORM, OCCASIONALLY USED IN SHOA.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	
N. ይህ:	ይህች: contr. ይች::	እለዋህ:	contr. የለህ:
G. የይህ:	የይህች: . . የይች::	የለዋህ:	. . የለህ:
D. ለይህ:	ለይህች: . . ለይች::	ለለዋህ:	. . ለለህ:
A. ይህን: } ይህንን::	ይህችን: . . ይችን:	እለዋህን: . .	እለህን::

2. For Remote Objects.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Common.	
N. ያ:	ያች: that.	እለዚያ: & እነዚያ: contr. እለያ: those.	
G. የዚያ:	የዚያች: of that.	የለዚያ: & የነዚያ: . . የለያ: of those.	
D. ለዚያ:	ለዚያች: to that.	ለለዚያ: & ለነዚያ: . . ለለያ: to those.	
A. ያን: ያችን: that.		እለዚያን: & እነዚያን: . . እለያን: those.	

FORM OCCASIONALLY OCCURRING IN SHOA.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Common.
N. እዛ:	እዛች: that.	Like the above, only contracting ዚያ: to ዛ::
G. የዛ:	የዛች: of that.	
D. ለዛ:	ለዛች: to that.	
A. እዛን: እዛችን: that.		

NOTE.—The Demonstrative Pronouns form Adverbs ; which see, under the head of Adverbs.

SECTION IV.

Interrogative Pronouns.

There are four: One Personal, **ማን**: *pl.* **እለማን**: “who?” “which?” “what sort of?” One Impersonal, **ምን**: “which?” “what?” One Common, **የት**: “what?” “which?” One Universal, **ምንድር**: “what?”

The Personal is **ማን**: “who?” “which?” *e.g.*

ማን: አደረገ: ይህን: Who did this?

ይህ: ማን: ነው: (or ማነው:) Who is this?

ከሁለቱ: ማን: Which of both?

The Impersonal is **ምን**: “which?” “what?” *e.g.*

ምን: አደረግህ: What hast thou done?

ምን: ቤት: Which house?

The Universal Interrogative Pronoun is **ምንድር**: "what?" e.g.

ይህ: **ምንድር**: **ነው**: *What is this?*

ማን: and **ምን**: are declinable, thus:

SINGULAR.	
Pers.	Impers.
Nom. ማን : who? which?	ምን : what? which?
Gen. ምማን : of whom? whose? of which?	የምን : of what? of which? whose?
Dat. ለማን : to (for) whom? to (for) which?	ለምን : to (for) what? to (for) which? wherefore?
Acc. ማንን : whom? which?	ምንን : what? which?
PLURAL.	
Nom. አለማን : who? which?	አለምን : which?
Gen. የለማን : whose? of which?	የለምን : of which? whose?
Dat. ለለማን : to whom? to which?	ለለምን : to which?
Acc. አለማንን : whom? which?	አለምንን : which?

ምንድር: has no Plural; and is defective in the Singular, having no Accusative Case.

Besides the preceding, they have the Interrogative Pronoun **የት**: or Euphonic **የቱ**: "what?" "who?" "which?" It is indeclinable, and used chiefly in forming Adverbs, by joining with Prepositions; as, **አንዲት**: **ወዲት**: &c.

SECTION V.

Reflective Pronouns.

They are three, **ባለቤት**:: **ራስ**: and **ነፍስ**: with the signification of *self*. They assume the Suffixes of the Possessive Pronoun, as in the English *myself, thyself, &c.* So is in all Abyssinia **ራስ**: with Suffixes **ራሴ**: **ራስህ**: **ራስሽ**: **ራስዋ**: **ራሱ**: **ራስዋ**: **ራሳችን**: **ራሳችሁ**: **ራሳቸው**: "myself," "thyself," &c. **ባለቤት**:, with Suffixes, is not used in Shoa; but in N.W. Abyssinia, it is common. **ነፍስ**: with Suffixes is used in all Abyssinia, though not so often as **ራስ**:: But the reflective mode of speaking is more frequently used in Verbs, without these Pronouns, as will be shown afterwards.

SECTION VI.

Distributive Separable Pronoun.

This is **አያንደንድ**: "each," "every," with Suffixes. As it is composed of a double **አንድ**: and the distributive **አያ**:, it has been numbered already among the Distributive Numerals.

SECTION VII.

Indefinite Pronouns.

These are the following :

ማንም : any, each, every one, whoever, whosoever.

ማናቸው : *m.* **ማናቸዩቱ** : *fem.* whosoever.

ሁሉ : all, each, every, any.

ሌላ : other.

አንደኛ : some, something.

1. **ማንም** : **ማናቸው** : and **ማናቸዩቱ** : are used only in the Singular, nor receive they any Suffix. When used with the Verb in the negative, they adopt the reverse to their natural signification, "none," "none whatever."

2. **ሁሉ** : is rather the Substantive **ሁል** : "totality," with Suffixes. It assumes all Suffixes, and is declinable ; but has no Plural.

3. **ሌላ** : is used in both the Plural and the Singular Numbers, and is declinable.

4. **አንደኛ** : is declinable, and used only in the Singular.

5. **አያሌ** : "some," "several," is declinable, and has but one number. Besides this, the words, "some" and "such," are circumscribed by Verbs ; *e.g.* "Some men like it," **የሚወዷት** : **አሉ** : *lit.* "There are men who like it." "Such:" **አንደህ** : **ያል** : or *pl.* **አንደህ** : **ያሉ** :: "who is," or "who are so."

SECTION VIII.

Inseparable Pronouns.

They are, with regard to their character, Personal, Possessive, Relative, and Distributive ; and with regard to their position, they are either Prefixes or Suffixes.

1. *Personal Suffixes to Verbs.**

They consist partly in modifications of the Personal Pronoun ; and are annexed to any part of the Verb except the Infinitive ; for that Mood, being considered in this respect as a Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes.

* We do not speak of those personal designations the Verbs receive at their beginning or end ; because they are so intimately connected with the Verb, that we cannot consider them separately.

The following Table contains them all:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3. ልዑ፡ ት፡ him.	ልት፡ her.		ልትዑ፡ them.	
2. ህ፡ thee.	ሽ፡ thee.			
.. honorif. 1.		ልትህ፡ you.	} ልትህ፡ you.	
.. . . . 2.		ልዋ፡ you.		
1.		ኝ፡ me.	ኝ፡ perfect. ኝ፡ pres. &c., us.	

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
Suff. 1.				
1. ጠበቀኝ፡	he protected	me.	1. ጠበቀኝ፡	he protected us.
.. 2. ጠበቀህ፡	he protected		ጠበቀኝ፡	(imp.) protect us!
.. .. ጠበቀሽ፡	thee.		2. ጠበቀትህ፡	he protected you.
.. .. hon. ጠበቀትህ፡	he protect-			
	ed you.		3. ጠበቀው፡	he protected them.
.. 3. ጠበቀው፡	{ he protected			
	him.			
	ጠበቀት፡	he protected her.		

NOTE.—Suffix 3d pers. sing. masc. to Prepositions has ት፡; e.g.

በት፡ in him.

ለት፡ to, or for him.

2. Possessive Suffixes to Nouns.

They are, to a certain degree, similar to the preceding.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3. ሁ, or ልዑ፡ his.	ዋ፡ her.		3. ልትዑ፡ their.	
.. hon.		ልትዑ፡ his, her.		
2. com. ህ፡ thy.	ሽ፡ thy.		2. ልትህ፡ your.	
.. hon. 1.		ልትህ፡ your.		
.. .. 2.		ልዋ፡ your.		
1.		ኔ፡ my.	1. ልኛ፡ our.	

Ex.—**ቤት**፡ "House," with Suffixes.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.	
3. ቤት፡ his house.	ቤትዋ፡ her house.		ቤትዑ፡ their h.	
.. hon.		ቤትዋው፡ his (her) h.		
2. ቤትህ፡	ቤትሽ፡ thy house.		ቤትህ፡ your h.	
.. hon. 1.		ቤትህ፡ your h.		
.. .. 2.		ቤትዋ፡ your house.		
1.		ቤቴ፡ my house.	ቤትኛ፡ our h.	

3. *Prefixed Relative Pronouns.*

There are two; *i.e.* **P**: for the Preterite, and **Pḡ**: for the rest; *e.g.* **ḤḤḤḤ: ḤḤḤḤ:** "the man who came." **ḤḤḤḤ: ḤḤḤḤ:** "The day which comes"; *i.e.* "the coming," "following day." See more under the Verbs.

4. *Prefixed Distributive Pronoun.*

There is but one, which has been mentioned already, under the Numerals: it is, **ḤḤ:** or **ḤḤ:** **ḤḤḤḤ: ḤḤḤḤ:** "Every three days." Prepositions have the power of absorbing the first letter; when care must be taken not to confound the remaining **P** — with the Relative Pronoun; bearing in mind, that the Relative *itself* would be absorbed by the Preposition: nor stands it, except before Verbs.

CHAP. IV.

ON THE VERBS.

The Verb being, next to the Noun, the most essential part of speech, we are to give it our fullest consideration. In entering upon it, we treat, 1. On its Formation and Quality; 2. On the Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs; 3. On their Flexion; 4. On their Conjugation; 5. On the Affixion of Pronouns to Verbs.

SECTION I.

Formation and Quality of Verbs.

1. The Verb, in general, seems to represent the chief developement of those roots of the language which are contained in the Noun. The original idea of the Noun is exhibited as a thing of time, found in a certain condition, and undergoing or producing various actions and changes. This consideration implies, that the Verb, in general, originates in the Noun. In the Hebrew, we can trace its course from the Primitive Nominal Form, through the Participle (in Kal), to the 3d pers. masc. preterite; the latter being, in all the Semitic Languages, the grammatical root of the Verb. In the Amharic, the Constructive Mood, of which we shall speak afterwards, seems to be the medium of transition from the Primitive Noun to the 3d pers. masc. preterite of the Verb.

2. Now the latter, the 3d masc. pers. sing. of the preterite in the Simple Forms of Verbs, constitutes, as has been just now alluded to, the origin of all the other Verbal Forms; the same as, in our languages, the Infinitive; or in the Greek, the Latin, the Italian, and others, the 1st pers. sing. of the present tense: on this account it is put forward, for grammatical and

lexical purposes, as the *radix*, or rather (because the true radices of the Verbs are contained in the Noun) as the stem, from which all the other forms branch off. In the Amharic, it presents various formations, as well as the Noun—*bilitera*, *trilitera*, *quadrilitera*, and *plurilitera*: but in it, as well as in the Noun, the majority consists of *triliteral* forms; which majority is still augmented, whenever the present contracted *biliteral* forms, and many *pluriliterals* evidently amplified, are restored to their original fulness or simplicity.

3. In reference to *Quality*, then, the Verbs present two grand divisions; *i.e.* *Perfect* and *Imperfect* Verbs, which again may be sub-divided in other classes. *Perfect* Verbs are those which are flexible in, at least, several Derivations, and throughout all the Moods, Tenses, and Persons in Conjugation, without losing any of their Radicals. *Imperfect* Verbs are either Defective, Augmented, or Irregular.

NOTE—(a) *Perfect* Verbs may be divided into *Primitives*, *i.e.* whose origin cannot be traced to any further root; and *Derivatives*, which have for their origin either a Noun (*Denominatives*), or another Verb (*Verbals*). We subjoin here a few specimens of each.

PRIMITIVES.

ቀበረ: he buried.

መለሰ: he turned, returned.

ሰገደ: he worshipped.

ቀሠፈ: he chastised.

ሸፈነ: he covered.

DENOMINATIVES.

Original Noun.

ከበረ: he was honoured.

ገለጸ: he revealed.

መሰከረ: he testified.

ሰነበተ: he remained.

በረከተ: was flatulent.

አመሰቀለ: crucified.

ክብር: honour.

ግልጽ: the public.

ሞስክር: witness.

ሰንበተ: Sabbath.

በረከተ: blessing.

መሰቀለ: cross, crucifix.

VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Original Verb.

መሰገነ: he was glorious.

መሠረተ: he laid a foundation.

ገነ: it flourished, he was glorious.

ሠራ: he built.

(b) Under *Defective* Verbs, we mean, (1) Those which occasionally lose some of the Radicals; and (2) Such as have not all the Moods or Tenses, or Persons in conjugation. They will be mentioned in their proper places.

(c) Irregular Verbs are of various kinds :

- A. Such in which the Affirmatives are irregular.
- B. Such as have either the first or second, or second and third Radical Letters contracted.
- C. Geminants.
- D. Reduplicated and Transposed forms.

All these will be exhibited, with their respective Conjugations, after the Regular or Perfect Verb.

SECTION II.

Various Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs.

1. In every language, the original idea of a Verb must be determinable by the relation of the subject to the object; and those various relations must be in some way or other expressible by the form of the Verb. The state of any subject of speech, or its action, is either confined to itself, or it exerts an influence on an object, or is itself the object of extraneous influence. This circumstance renders, in every language, three classes of Verbs, or three conditions of the same verb, necessary; *i.e.* neutrality (immanence), action upon other objects, and suffering. In the English Grammars, these qualities are called *Voices*; in the Semitic languages, *Conjugations*, or better, *Derivations*.

2. The ways to express these Voices are different in different languages, according to the pliability and vigour the latter possess.

The more original and vigorous a language is, we conceive, the more will it be able to derive all it requires, for the purpose of expressing the various relations of the verb, from the original verb itself, without the assistance of auxiliaries, and without circumscription: and this seems to show the superiority of the Semitic over the European Languages; because the former fully possess that power, while the latter are deficient in it.

In the English, the Passive Voice is not expressible, but by the Auxiliary *To be*. The Greek language has the power of expressing it by a change of the Active in the termination, converting ω in *ομαι*, &c. The Transitive is, in a few instances, formed by a change of the vowel, as "to fell" (*i.e.* make fall), from "to fall"; sometimes by Prepositions, as "to enforce," "to belabour," &c.; but, on the whole, European languages are deficient in this respect.

3. In the Semitic languages, the form of the original verb is altered, either by the mere change of vowels in the same radical consonants, or by an addition of servile letters with a suitable change of vowels, in order to express the various determinations and modifications, *i.e.* Voices or Conjugations, of which the verb is susceptible. Of these derivations, the

Hebrew Verb has seven; the Arabic, thirteen; the Ethiopic, ten different forms. For the Amharic, Ludolf has assigned but four Conjugations; but an attention to the following will show that there are many more.

4. As the Trilaterals are the most numerous and the most perfect words, we present the reader, first, with a list of all the Forms of Conjugation, to which the perfect Trilateral Verb is liable. And since all these forms do not proceed from any single stem, we take several stems together. The Verbs which will serve us for this purpose are the following:

መለሰ : <i>act.</i> he returned.	ሰበረ : he burst.
ከበረ : he was glorious, respectable. (ደረገ : non occ.)	
ሰደበ : he reviled.	አደረገ : he did.
ነገረ : he said.	ደነዘ : was blunt.
መገ-ተ : he contradicted.	ፈተለ : spun.
መሰለ : he resembled.	በረቆ : he fulminated.*
ወረደ : he descended.	

LIST OF CONJUGATIONS OF THE REGULAR AND PERFECT TRILITERAL VERB.

- I. **መለሰ**: *act.* "he returned," "repeated." **ከበረ**: *neut.* "he was respectable."
- II. **ሳደበ**: *intens.* "he scolded exceedingly."
- III. **አከበረ**: *trs.* "he honoured."
- IV. **ተመለሰ**: *pass.* "was returned." *refl.* "returned."
- V. **አደገረ**: *trs. & caus.* "he made speak," "caused to speak."
- VI. **ተናገረ**: *contin.* "he spoke." *intens.* **ተሳደበ**: "reviled," "blasphemed;" *i.q.* **ሳደበ**: **ተማከረ**: *recipr.* "he counselled," "gave and took advice."
- VII. **ተግዎግተ**: *recipr.* "he disputed."
- VIII. **አስመለሰ**: *caus.* "he caused to return."

* These are the known forms of each of these Verbs: **መለሰ**: **ተመለሰ**: **አስመለሰ**: **ተመለሰሰ**: **ተመለሰሰ**: **ከበረ**: **አከበረ**: **አስከበረ**: **ሰደበ**: **ሳደበ**: **አሰደበ**: **ተሰደበ**: **አሳደበ**: **ተሳደበ**: **ነገረ**: **አደገረ**: **ተናገረ**: **ተናገረ**: **ደነገረ**: **አደነገረ**: **አወሸነገረ**: **መገ-ተ**: **ተመገ-ተ**: **ተግዎግተ**: **መሰለ**: **ተመሰለ**: **አስመሰለ**: **አስመሰለ**: **ወረደ**: **አወረደ**: **አዋረደ**: **ተዋረደ**: **ተዋረደ**: **ወራረደ**: **ሰበረ**: **አሰበረ**: **ተሰበረ**: **ሰገበረ**: **ተሰገበረ**: (**ደረገ**) **አደረገ**: **ተደረገ**: **አስደረገ**: **አደራረገ**: **ደነዘ**: **አደነዘ**: **ደነዘዘ**: **አደነዘዘ**: **ፈተለ**: **ተፈተለ**: **አስፈተለ**: **ፈተለተለ**: **ተፈተለተለ**: **በረቆ**: **አንጸበረቆ**:

- IX. **አስመሳል**: *caus. & intens.* "he caused to resemble," "dissimulated," "flattered."
- X. **አስተነገረ**: *caus.* "he made speak." **አስተሰረዞ**: "procured forgiveness." **አስተነፈሰ**: *reiter.* "he inhaled and exhaled," "he respired," "breathed."
- XI. **ተዋዋረደ**: *intens., pass., & refl.,* "he was completely humbled," "humbled himself completely."
- XII. **ሰባበረ**: *intens.* "broke into pieces."
- XIII. **አደራረገ**: *intens.* "he performed great things."
- XIV. **ተመለሰ**: *reiter.* "he returned repeatedly;" *i. e.* "walked." **ተመካከረ**: *recipr.* "he consulted with others," "took and gave advice."
- XV. **ተናገረ**: *reiter. & recipr.* "conversed with another," "spoke frequently."
- XVI. **ደነዘ**: *intens. & intrans.* "to be blunt," "stiff," "obdurate."
- XVII. **አደነዘ**: *trs.* "to blunt," "stiffen," "obdurate."
- XVIII. **ተመለሰ**: *refl. & pass.* "he returned," "was returned."
- XIX. **ተሸማመ**: "he reviled."
- XX. **አደናገረ**: *intens.* "he talked one out of any thing," "dissuaded."
- XXI. **አወሸፍገረ**: "he folded his hands."
- XXII. **ፈተተ**: "he rubbed thin between his fingers."
- XXIII. **ተፈተተ**: *pass.* "it was rubbed thin between the fingers."
- XXIII. **አንጸበረዋ**: *diminut.* "it shone," "glittered," "sparkled," "re-splended."

These Forms are not of equally frequent occurrence. Those occurring most frequently, are, Nos. I. III. IV. V. VI. VIII. X. XIV. and XV. The rest are more rare.*

5. Observations on this List:—Most of the forms it contains are analogous to the forms of derivation in the Hebrew, the Arabic, and more especially in the Ethiopic Verb; which will be evident from the following remarks:

I. **መለሰ**: comprises the Ethiopic and Arabic I. and II. forms, and the Hebrew *Kal* and *Piél*.

* We beg to observe here, that, on account of the haste in which the Dictionary was prepared for press, the Forms XVI. to XXIII. were not arranged in it under their roots; as the Author was not then aware, that they were simple derivations from the Trilateral Verb. To this conviction he arrived when drawing up this Grammar.

II. **ሳደበ**: of rare occurrence, answers the Ethiopic and Arabic III. form, **ጋበረ**: and **فَاعَلَ**.

III. **አከበረ**: answers to the Ethiopic IV. and V., and to the Arabic IV.

IV. **ተመለሰ**: corresponds with the Eth. VI. and VII., and with the Arabic V.

V. **አፍገረ**: "he made speak," answers the Arabic XI.

VI. **ተፍገረ**: "he spoke," answers the Eth. VII. **ተጋበረ**: and Arabic VI. **تَفَاعَلَ**.

VII. **ተምዋገተ**: seldom occurs, and has no correspondent in the other languages.

VIII. IX. and X. answer the Ethiopic and Arabic X. **አስተገበረ**: **اِسْتَفْعَلَ**.

The rest are peculiar to the Amharic; although modifications of the same forms occur, especially in the Arabic.

6. Before we proceed, we notice the Conjugations of the other classes of Verbs:

I. TRILITERALS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL.

They are affected by the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 2. B. 3. C.

The following list contains their several conjugations:

Radices, **አመኑ**: "he believed"; and **አለፈ**: "he passed."

I. **አመኑ**: "he believed."

II. **ተመኑ**: "he was believed," "creditable," "trustworthy"; "he entrusted."

III. **አሳመኑ**: "he persuaded," "he made believe."

IV. **አስተመኑ**: "he entrusted," "accredited," "attested."

V. **ተላለፈ**: "he trespassed," "varied."

VI. **አስተላለፈ**: *recipr. & trs.* "he made pass in different ways."*

* Other Verbs of this class: **አረመ**: **አረሰ**: **አረዋ**: **አረዘ**: **አረደ**: **አረገ**: **አረጠ**: **ሀረፈ**: **አቀፈ**: **አበረ**: **አበደ**: **አበጠ**: **አተመ**: **አነሰ**: **አነዋ**: **አነጸ**: **አከለ**: **አወዋ**: **አወከ**: **አዘለ**: **አዘነ**: **አደለ**: **አደመ**: **አደረ**: **አደሰ**: **አደነ**: **አደገ**: **አደፈ**: **አገመ**: **አገዘ**: **አጠረ**: **አጸረ**: **አጠነ**: **አጪደ**: **አጸፈ**: **አጸበ**: **አፈረ**: **ሀበዋ**: **ሀረዋ**: The Dictionary shows, that the original Forms of these Verbs are not all of prima **አ**; but in the Amharic, they may be all comprised in this form.

II. GEMINANT TRILITERALS.

They are originally Biliterals, whose second radical letter has been doubled. See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.

List of Triliteral Geminants.

- I. **ለቀቀ**: *intrs. & act.* "went away," "dismissed."
- II. **አረቀቀ**: *trs.* "he thinned," "rarefied."
- III. **ተለቀቀ**: *pass.* "he was dismissed"; *refl.* "he abandoned himself."
- IV. **አለቀቀ**: *intens.* "he yawned." **አሳደደ**: "he persecuted."
- V. **ተሳደደ**: *pass. int.* "he was persecuted."
- VI. **አስመረረ**: *caus.* "he embittered," "exasperated."
- VII. **አንሻተተ**: "he glided down" on his posteriors; "he cheated."
- VIII. **ተንሻተተ**: *pass.* "he was pushed down," "was cheated."
- ተንጋለለ**: "he fornicated."
- IX. **አንጠራራ**: } "stretched himself." *
- X. **ተንጠራራ**: }

III. GEMINANTS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL †

- I. **አመመ**: *intrs.* "was painful"; *trs.* "gave pain."
- II. **ተመመ**: *pass.* "felt pain."
- III. **አሳመመ**: *caus.* "gave pain," "made sick."
- IV. **አስተመመ**: *sympathetic*, "nursed sick persons."

IV. PERFECT BILITERALS. ‡

- I. **ገነ**: "was beautiful." **ደገ**: "was great."
- II. **አገነ**: "beautified," "praised." **አደገ**: "he grew."
- III. **ተሰጠ**: "was given."

* These Verbs are very numerous. Cf. in the Dictionary **ለቀቀ**: **ለከከ**: **ለጠጠ**: **መረረ**: **መነነ**: **መዘዘ**: **መጸጸ**: **ረቀቀ**: **ዘለለ**: **ሰለለ**: **ሰረረ**: **ሰቀቀ**: **ሰደደ**: **ሰፈፈ**: **ሸለለ**: **ሸረረ**: **ሸተተ**: **ቀለለ**: **ቀደደ**: **በረረ**: **ባነነ**: **ታለለ**: **ነበበ**: **ፍዘዘ**: **ነደደ**: **ነጠጠ**: **ከረረ**: **ከሰሰ**: **ከበበ**: **ከተተ**: **ኩነነ**: **ወረረ**: **ወደደ**: **ዘፈፈ**: **ደሰሰ**: **ደቀቀ**: **ገለለ**: **ጉለለ**: **ገረረ**: **ገተተ**: **ገደደ**: **ጉደደ**: **ገፈፈ**: **ጠመመ**: **ጠራራ**: **ጸበበ**: **ጠበበ**: **ጸለለ**: **ጸገገ**: **ፈዘዘ**:

† **አመመ**: **አለለ**: **አበበ**: **አከከ**: **አዘዘ**:

‡ **ገነ**: **ደገ**: **መሸ**: **ሸሸ**: **ረጪ**: **ሰጠ**: **ሸረ**: **ሸኘ**: **ቀረ**: **ቀኘ**: **በጀ**: **በጠ**: **ተኘ**: **ነጪ**: **ጠጠ**:

- IV. አሰገነ: "he beautified," "glorified."
- V. አሳደገ: "made grow," "trained," "educated."
- VI. ገነነ: "flourished."
- VII. አገነነ: "made to flourish."
- VIII. ተሰጣጠ: "to betray each other."

V. IMPERFECT BILITERALS. Prima አ::

- I. አዋ: "he saw."
- II. ታዋ: *pass.* "was seen," "appeared."
- III. አሳዋ: *trs.* "made to see," "showed."
- IV. አስታዋ: *trs.* "made to be seen," "brought into sight."
- V. ታዋዋ: *recipr.* "looked at each other," "was over against each other."
"made look at each other."

VI. DEFECTIVE VERBS; i.e. Verbs which have dropped one or two Radical Letters, either in the middle or at the end.

1. Verbs with Absorbed Guttural at the end.

- I. ገባ: *intrs.* "he entered." Eth. ገብአ:
- II. አገባ: *trs.* "he introduced."
- III. ተገባ: "it was proper," "becoming," "it belonged."
- IV. አጋባ: *act.* "he married."
- V. ተጋባ: *pass.* "was married."
- VI. አስገባ: *caus.* "made go in," "introduced."
- VII. በቃቃ: *intens.* "was quite sufficient."
- VIII. አገባባ: *reiter.* "used to marry," "frequently cohabited," "behaved properly."
- IX. አጸፈፈ: *intens.* "he comforted."
- X. ተጸፈፈ: *pass.* "was comforted." ተከፈፈ: *recipr.* "quarrelled with each other."*

* Of the same class are the following: ገባ: ከፈ: ገፈ: ነፈ: ጸላ: ጸፈ: መፈ: ነሣ: ለማ: ለካ: መለ: በላ: መታ: መጣ: ነካ: ነቃ: መቼ: መካ: ሠፈ: ሰፈ: ሠዋ: ረባ: ረባ: ረታ: ረካ: ረፈ: ረጋ: ሰላ: ሰማ: ሠሣ: ሰባ: ሰካ: ሰፈ: ቀላ: ቀማ: ቀባ: ቀፈ: ቀፈ: ቀጣ: በፈ: በካ: በቃ: በካ: በሣ: በሣ: በጣ: ተላ: ተጋ: ተፈ: ነፈ: ነጸ: ነጋ: አማ: ከካ: ከፈ: ወቃ: ወሣ: ወፈ: ወጋ: ወጣ: ዘማ: ዘፈ: ዘጋ: ደፈ: ገሣ: ገፈ: ገሣ: ፈፈ: &c.

2. *Verbs with Absorbed Guttural in the middle.*

- I. ማለ: Eth. መሐለ: "he swore."
- II. አማለ: *trs.* "made swear," "administered an oath."
- III. ተማለ: *pass.* "was sworn."
- IV. አስማለ: *trs.* "made swear."
- V. አጣጣለ: *frequentat.* "distributed by casting lots."
- VI. ተማማለ: *recipr.* "mutually swore," "conspired."
- VII. ተማለለ: *intens.* "besought," "adjured."*

3. *Verbs with an Absorbed P: in the middle.†*

- I. ሸለ: *act.* "he sold." ሐደ: *neutr.* "he went."
- II. አሐደ: *trs.* "he made go," "drove the threshing oxen."
- III. ተሸለ: *pass.* "was sold."
- IV. ተሸየለ: "he traded." ተካየደ: "made a treaty."
- V. አስሐደ: *caus.* "made go."

4. *Verbs with an Absorbed W: in the middle‡.*

- I. ቆመ: *neut.* "he stood."
- II. አቆመ: *trs.* "made to stand," "erected."
- III. ተቆመ: *pass.* "was erected."
- IV. ተታወመ: *intens.* "he withstood," "resisted."
- V. አስቀ-የ: *caus.* "he detained," "caused to wait."
- VI. ተቋቀ-መ: } *intens.* "ultimately resisted."
- VII. ተቋቋመ: }

5. *Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadrilaterals.* They are but few in number, and only three Conjugations have been discovered§.

- I. ላለ: "to be loose," "lax."
- II. አላለ: *act.* "to loosen," "slacken."
- III. ተጋጧለ: *intens.* "to stamp," "pound," "clapper," "to chatter."

* See also the following Verbs: ላሰ: ላቀ: ላከ: ላጠ: ላፈ: ማለ: ማረ: ማሰ: ፈቀ: ማገ: ማፀ: ሣለ: ራቀ: ራበ: ሳለ: ሳማ: ሳቀ: ሳበ: ሳተ: ሳኔ: ሻለ: ሻረ: ሻተ: ቻለ: ፍደ: ካሰ: ካደ: ዋለ: ዋሰ: ዋኘ: ዋጠ: ዛገ: ደረ: ደሰ: ደኔ: ጋለ: ጋተ: ጋዘ: ጣለ::

† ሸለ: ሐደ: (ኪደ:) ለለ: ሸኔ: ጤሰ: ፈዘ::

‡ ሆኔ: ሞቀ: ሞተ: ርጠ: ሾመ: ቆመ: ቆየ: ፍረ: ኩረ: ዞረ: ጸመ::

§ ላለ: ራራ: ሳሳ: ሳጣ: ዋጀ::

6. *Verbs doubly imperfect.*

(a) Beginning with an **አ**: and having an Absorbed Guttural at the end. There are but few (**አፆ**: and **አለ**: not being included): **አጣ**: **አዉ**::

- I. **አጣ**: *negat.* "to want."
- II. **ተጣ**: *neg. pass.* "to be wanted."
- III. **አሳጣ**: *caus.* "to deprive."

(b) *Beginning with ፆ: which absorbs a Guttural.*

- I. **ፆዘ**: *Eth.* **አንዘ**:: *act.* "to seize."
- II. **አፆዘ**: *trs.* "caused another to seize."
- III. **ተፆዘ**: *pass.* "was seized."
- IV. **አስፆዘ**: *caus.* "caused to seize," "betrayed."
- V. **ተፆፆዘ**: *pass. frequentat. & recipr.* "was frequently or alternately seized," "seized frequently," "completely," or "reciprocally."

(c) *Various forms of the Verb አለ: "To say."*

Not to be confounded with the Auxiliary **አለ**: "To be." Its forms are partly derived from **አለ**:, partly from **ጠህለ**: *Eth.*

- I. **አለ**: "he said."
- II. **አበለ**: "to deceive by talking."
- III. **ተገለ**: "to be said," "called."
- IV. **ተበለ**: "to be deceived."
- V. **ተገለ**: "to rumour in public."
- VI. **ተገበለ**: }
- VII. **ተገገለ**: } *recipr.* "to say to each other."
- VIII. **አገበለ**: "he persuaded."
- IX. **ተለለ**: "he was talked into any thing," "was persuaded."
- X. **አተለለ**: "he persuaded," "cheated by talking."

(d) *Conjugation of the Verb ተፀ:: and መጣ::*VII. *VARIOUS CONJUGATIONS OF QUADRILITERAL AND PLURILITERAL VERBS.*1. *Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.*

Stems: **ለመለመ**: "to be green." **ለቀለቀ**: "to bedaub." **ነቀነቀ**: "to shake." **በደበደ**: "to cudgel." **ቀሰቀሰ**: "to excavate." **ቀጠቀጠ**: "to bruise." (**ከረከረ**::)

- I. **ለመለመ**: *neut.* "it was green," "fresh."
- II. **አለመለመ**: *trs.* "he made green," "verdant," "refreshed."

- III. **ተለቀለቀ**: *pass.* "he was bedaubed."
- IV. **አነቃነቀ**: *act. intens.* "he shook."
- V. **ተለቃለቀ**: *refl.* "bedaubed," "washed himself."
- VI. **አስለቀለቀ**: *caus.* "he caused bedaubing."
- VII. **አንበደበደ**: *act.* "beat," "shook."
- VIII. **ተንቀጠቀጠ**: *pass. & neutr.* "trembled."
- IX. **አንቀሳቀሰ**: *act.* "he stirred," "moved."
- X. **ተንቀሳቀሰ**: *pass. & neutr.* "was moved," "moved."
- XI. **አሳንቀሳቀሰ**: *trs.* "he moved."*

2. *Derivates from Trilaterals having one Radical doubled and transposed.*

- I. **ደሉደሞ**: *neut.* "it was blunt."
- II. **አደሉደሞ**: *trs.* "he blunted."
- III. **ተደሉደሞ**: *pass.* "was blunted."
- IV. **አከፍወኔ**: *trs.* "he gave success."
- V. **ተከፍወኔ**: *neut.* "he succeeded," "prospered."
- VI. **አንገረገበ**: *neutr.* "it became knotty."

But few verbs belong to this class.

3. *Geminants.*

We rank under this class only such forms as cannot, with our present knowledge of the language, be considered to belong to Form XVI. of the regular Trilateral Verb. This class is but small:

- I. **ኩበለለ**: *intrans.* "he fled," "escaped."
- II. **ተደመሰሰ**: *pass.* "was destroyed."

* The Verbs of this class are very numerous. The following do belong to them:

መረመረ: መነመነ: ረበረበ: ሰበሰበ: ቀለቀለ: ቀ-ረቀ-ረ: ቀ-ሰቀ-ሰ:
በረበረ: በሰበሰ: ጠመጠመ: ገበገበ: በዘበዘ: በጠበጠ: ተረተረ:
ጠቀጠቀ: ገነገነ: ተበተበ: ተከተከ: ጠረጠረ: ተፈተፈ: ጠበጠበ:
ገዘገዘ: ጠፈጠፈ: ጉደጉደ: ነሰነሰ: ነዘነዘ: ገለገለ: ከለከለ:
ጠለጠለ: ከረከረ: ኩረኩረ: ኩደኩደ: ወለወለ: ወዘወዘ:
ጨመጨመ: ጨበጨበ: ጦሉጦሉ: ወረወረ: ዘበዘበ: ዘፈዘፈ:
ደለደለ: ደረደረ: ደበደበ: ጨፈጨፈ: ደፈደፈ: ደነደነ: ጀፈጀፈ: ገመ
ገመ: ጉረጉረ: ገሰገሰ: ፈለፈለ: ፈረፈረ: ፈገፈገ: And the Augmented Forms:
አሸከረከረ: (for አስከረከረ) ተቆበዘበዘ:

- III. **ተገመገመ**: *neutr.* "walked nimbly," "affectedly," "proudly."
 IV. **አስጠነቀቀ**: *trs.* "he warned," "cautioned."
 V. **አንከላለ**: *act.* "he rolled about."
 VI. **ተንከላለ**: *pass.* "was rolled about."

4. *Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals.*

- I. **መሰገነ**: *neutr.* "was glorious."
 II. **አመሰገነ**: *trs.* "he glorified."
 III. **ተመሰገነ**: *pass.* "he was glorified."
 IV. **አሰፋፀጥ**: *intens.* "he dismissed."
 V. **ተሰፋፀጥ**: *pass.* "he was dismissed," "took his leave."
 VI. **አስመሰገነ**: *caus.* "he caused to glorify."
 VII. **ገለገበጠ**: *intens.* "he overthrew completely."
 VIII. **ተገለገበጠ**: *pass. intens.* "he was completely overthrown."
 IX. **ተሰፋገበጥ**: *recipr. & reüter.* "took leave from each other."*

SECTION III.

On the Flexion of Verbs.

The Flexion of Verbs treats on their *Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.*

1. *Moods of the Amharic Verb.*

The Amharic Verb has Seven Moods: (a) the *Indicative*; (b) the *Contingent*; (c) the *Subjunctive*; (d) the *Constructive*; (e) the *Imperative*; (f) the *Infinitive*; (g) the *Participle*.

* 1. This class is most numerous, and comprises a great variety of Verbs, as the following List will show: መረከዘ: መሰከረ: መሰከወ: መነኩሰ: መነዘሀ: ሰበቀለ: ሰነከለ: ሰነዘረ: ሰነገለ: ሰነጠቀ: ሸመገለ: ሸነከረ: ሸነገለ: ቀለበሰ: ቀለወጠ: ቀለጠፈ: ቀመጠለ: ቀ-ረጠመ: ቀገጠረ: በረከተ: ተረጉመ: ተነኩለ: ትነከረ: አመለከ: አነከሰ: አነጠሰ: ወነጀለ: (ወነገለ:) ዘነበለ: ዘነጉረ: ደነቀረ: ደነዘዘ: ደነገጠ: ጉለመሰ: ጉነቀለ: ጉነበሰ: ጉነጀለ: ጉነጸፈ: ጠረቀመ: ጠፋወጥ: ጨነገፈ: ጸወለገ: ፈነተረ: ፈነቀለ::

2. Most of the forms comprised in this List are Derivative; either from Nouns, as መሰከረ: መነኩሰ: ትነከረ: በረከተ: or, as most of the rest, from Triliteral Verbs. The use of the liquid **ከ** in this amplification of forms, is remarkable; e.g. አነጠሰ: is from the Arabic عَطَس, ሰነበጥ: from the Hebrew נבש, ሰነጠቀ: from the Eth. ሰጠቀ:: ሰነዘረ: from the Eth. ሰዘረ: &c.

A. The *Indicative* Mood has nothing particular. It has two Tenses, the Preterite and the Present (or Future); besides which, other Tenses are formed by the Contingent and the Constructive, in connexion with Auxiliaries.

B. The *Contingent* is the simple verbal form with the Personal Preformatives and Terminations, and serves for the Indicative as well as for the Subjunctive, according as it is either, (1) Simple; or (2) has Conjunctions prefixed, and what the nature of those Conjunctions is; or (3) whether any, and what sort of Auxiliary, is attached to it. (See pp. 66, 67.)

C. The *Conjunctive* or *Subjunctive* Mood is not used in the Amharic, except for the purpose of expressing a desire, or request, or obligation. Its peculiarity consists in its Radicals, after the prefixion of the Personal Serviles, assuming the form of the Imperative. (See pp. 68, 69.)

D. A curious Mood, and peculiar to the Amharic and Tigrê languages, having its beginning undeveloped in the Ethiopic Infinitive, is the *Constructive*. It is formed by the simple root of the verb with Personal Afformatives; and has four forms; one simple, one augmented, and two compound forms. (See pp. 70, 71.)

E. The form of the *Imperative* (its nature being the same as in other languages) is short. (See p. 71.)

F. The *Infinitive*, or Verbal Substantive, is formed by the prefixion of **oo**: to the Simple Form.

G. The *Participle* presents five; viz. three Simple, and two Compound Forms. The three former, partaking of a nominal character, have been exhibited in the Table of Derivative Nouns: the two latter are formed by the Finite Verb Preterite and Contingent, to which certain Preformatives are prefixed; and they retain their flexibility, i.e. capability of being conjugated. Besides this, they are all declinable. (See pp. 72, 73.)

We come now to speak,

II. Of the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.

They are not so exactly distinguished in the Amharic as in our European Languages; in fact, the Abyssinians have not, strictly speaking, more than two divisions of time; i.e. the *Past* and the *Present*; the *Present* being used also for the *Future*. The *Past* is subdivided into the *Perfect*, and *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*; the *Perfect* being rendered by the simple Preterite form, and the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*, (which are not distinguished from each other) being composed either of the Contingent or the Simple Constructive, with the Preterite Auxiliary **in**፤:: The *Present*, which might be, perhaps with propriety, called *Aorist*, because it is appli-

cable to the Future as well as to the Present Tense, is a form composed of the Contingent and the Auxiliary **አለ**:: In order to distinguish the Future from the Present, where the context is not in itself clear enough, certain phrases are adopted which leave no doubt that the time is yet to come in which the action &c. of the subject is to take place. But more of this afterwards. (See p. 66.)

3. The *Number* of Conjugation is but twofold, Singular and Plural.

4. The *Persons*.

There are, in reality, not more than *three* for each Number; viz. the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person spoken of; but the grammatical forms are more, as has been shown under the article of Pronouns, Chap. III.; namely, seven forms for the Singular, and three for the Plural. Now the Semitic Languages have this in common, that the personal distinctions in the Conjugations of Verbs are expressed by certain letters affixed or prefixed, or both, to the Radicals of the Verb; and in so doing, the act of Conjugation is accomplished. We call the prefixed letters *Preformatives*, and the affixed ones *Afformatives*. The following List exhibits them.

(a) *Preformatives*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
		3.	Com. Gender.
3d pers. masc.	ደ —:	3.	ደ —:
.. .. fem.	ት —:		
2d .. m. & f.	ት —:	2.	ት —:
.. .. hon. 1.	ደ —:		
.. 2.	ት —:		
1st .. com.	አ —:	1.	አን —:

(b) *Afformatives*.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.				
	Pret.	Pres. Subj.	Constr.	Com.	Pret.	Pres.	Subj.	Constr.
3. masc.	none.	none.	—o.	3.	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ሐ:
.. fem.	—ት:	.. ..	—³ ላ.					
2. masc.	—ሀ:	.. ..	—³ ሀ:	2.	— ³ ሐትሀ:	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ህ,	— ³ ሐትሀ:
.. fem.	—ሽ:	.. ፤	— ³ ሽ:					
.. hon. 1.	— ³ ህ	.. ³ ህ	— ³ ሐ:					
.. .. 2.	— ³ ሐትሀ:	.. ³ ህ	— ³ ሐትሀ:					
1. com.	—ሀ:	.. ..	—³ ሐ.	1.	—ት:	none		— ³ ሐት:

What hitherto has been said, may suffice for the preliminaries: we therefore now proceed to the *Conjugation of the Verbs*.

SECTION IV.

Conjugation of Verbs.

Before we enter upon the conjugation of the *Regular Verb*, we give the conjugation of the two *Auxiliary Verbs*:

አል: he is.

ነበረ: he was;

and of the Irregular and Defective Verb Substantive, **ነው**: "he is."

A. **አል**: Eth. **ሀለወ**: contr. **ሀሉ**: "he is," "there is" (French, *il y a*), is used only in the Present; but that has a Preterite form.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Common.	Common.
3d pers. አል : he is.	አለች : she is.		አሉ : { they are, he (hon.) is.
2d .. አለህ :	አለሽ : thou art.		አላችሁ : you are.
... .. hon. 1.		አሉ : } you	
.. .. 2.		አላችሁ : } are.	
1st		አለሁ : I am.	አለን : we are.

NOTE 1.— This verb is not to be confounded with the Irregular Verb **አል**: "he said"; which will be given, when we treat of the Irregular Verbs in general.

2. The 3d pers. sing. and plur., combined with Suffixed Pronouns, have the same signification as "*est*" and "*sunt*" in the Latin, with the Dative of the Personal Pronoun; *e.g.* **ሌኝ** **አለኝ**: "I have (possess) money."

ለኝ **አለኝ**: "I have (possess) money."

ለኝ **አለኝ**: "he has (possesses) children."

3. As Auxiliary, the 3d pers. sing. masc. is changed into **አል**: *e.g.*

ይላል for **ይል**: **አል**: he says.

ተቀምጥዋል for **ተቀምጦ**: **አል**: he is sitting.

B. **ነበረ**: "he was," is used as Auxiliary for the Past Tenses in the Indicative and Subjunctive. It has only the Preterite.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Common.
3. ነበረ : } he (ነበረ ;) was.	ነበረች : she was.		ነበረ : they were.
2. ነበርህ :	ነበርሽ : { thou wast.		ነበሩችሁ : { you were.
.. hon. 1.		ነበሩ : you were.	
.. .. 2.		ነበሩችሁ : { you were.	
1.		ነበርሁ : I was.	ነበርን : we were.

NOTE.—When used as an Auxiliary, **ነበር**: serves often for any person Singular or Plural; e.g.

ተቀምጠው: **ነበር**: they were sitting.

ትመጣ: **ነበር**: thou wouldst come.

C. **ነው**: *He is.*

This verb is singularly anomalous. It consists of merely one radical letter **ነ**:, to which the Verbal Suffixes are attached, instead of Personal Affirmatives. Is used only in one form, which we may call the Preterite of the Indicative, because it resembles that more than any other form.

SINGULAR.			Common.	PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.		
3d pers. ነው : he is.	ነች : she is.			ነኛው : they are
2d pers. ነህ : thou art.	ነሽ : thou art.			ነኛህ : you are
.. .. hon. 1.		ነኝህ :	} you are.	
.. .. 2.		ነቅ :		
1st pers.		ነኝ : I am.		ነኝ : we are.

This is the regular form of this anomalous verb. Deviations are these: **ነዋ**:, for the 3d pers. sing. masc. interrogative, "Is he?". In the Shoa Dialect, **ነውደ**: for the regular **ነውን**: e.g.

እንደት: **ነዋ**: How is it? for **እንደት**: **ነው**::

A second deviation is **ነች**:, in the Shoa Dialect, "She is," for **ነች**::

1. *Conjugation of the Perfect and Trilateral Verbs.*

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple form **ከበረ**: neut. "He was honourable." **መለሰ**: act. "he turned." intrs. "he answered." **ሰደበ**: trs. "he scolded," "blasphemed."

(a) *Indicative Mood.*

α. PRETERITE.

SINGULAR.			Common.	PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.		
3d pers. ከበረ : { he was ho- nourable.	ከበረች : { she was ho- nourable.			
2d .. ከበርህ :	ከበርሽ : { thou wast ho- nourable.			
.. hon. 1.		ከበረ :	} you were	
.. .. 2.		ከበረኝህ :		honourable.
1.		ከበርሁ : I was honourable.		
Common.				
3d pers. ከበረ : they were honourable.				
2d .. ከበረኝህ : you were honourable.				
1st .. ከበርን : we were honourable.				

β. PRESENT AND FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.		
Masc.	Fem.	Common.
3dp. ይከብራል : { he is, will be hon.	ትከብራለች : { she is, will be hon.	
2. ትከብራለህ :	ትከብርያለሽ : { thou art, wilt be hon.	
.. hon. 1.	ይከብራሉ :	{ you are, or will be hon.
.. .. 2.	ትከብራላችሁ :	
1.	እከብራለሁ :	{ I am, shall be hon.

PLURAL.

Common.

3d pers. **ይከብራሉ** : they are, will be honourable.

2d .. **ትከብራላችሁ** : you are, will be honourable.

1st .. **እከብራለን** : we are, shall be honourable.

NOTE 1.—Whether this form, when it occurs, is intended for the Present or for the Future Tense, generally depends on the context. In order, however, to leave no doubt when they speak of future things, they use the simple contingent form with additional particles; e.g. **እከብር፡ ዘንድ፡ እለኝ** : “I have (am) to be honourable.” **እከብር፡ ዘንድ፡ ጊዜ፡ እለኝ** : “time is for me (to come) that I am to be honourable,” &c.

2. Personal Suffixes, and sometimes the Conjunction **ም** :, are infixed between the Simple Form and the Auxiliary.

(b.) CONTINGENT.

α. Simple.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Common.	Common.
3d pers. ይከብር :	ትከብር :		ይከብሩ :
2d .. ትከብር :	ትከብሪ :		ትከብሩ :
.. hon. 1.		ይከብሩ :	
.. .. 2.		ትከብሩ :	
1st pers.		እከብር :	እከብር :

As this form is used for both the Indicative and the Subjunctive, as well as for the formation of Participles, we have given no translation of it; but shall present a few instances here, to illustrate its use:

ደከብር: ዘንድ: in order that he may be honourable.

ሊከብር: that he may be honourable.

እንደከብር: that he is honourable.

ቢከብር: or **ደከብር: እንደሆነ:** if he is (be) honourable.

ከከብር: than that he should be honourable.

ሲከብር: while he is honourable.

የዐዛከብር: he that is honourable.

እይከብርም: he is not honourable.

The Present and Future of the Indicative, also, is a composition of the Contingent with the Auxiliary **ከለ**: which is omitted whenever the word receives any augmentation at the beginning or at the end, except Suffixes or Copulative Conjunctions.

β. COMPOUND.

SINGULAR.

Masc.			Fem.			Common.		
3d p. ደከብር: ነበር:			{ he was, had been hon.			{ she was, had been hon.		
2. ተከብር: ነበርህ:			{ thou wast, hadst been hon.			{ you were, had been hon.		
.. hon. 1. . . . .			. ደከብር: ነበሩ:			{ I was, had been hon.		
.. .. 2. . . . .			. ተከብር: ነበሩትህ:			{ you were, had been hon.		
1. . . . .			. እከብር: ነበርሁ:			{ I was, had been hon.		

PLURAL.

Common.

3d pers. **ደከብር: ነበሩ:** they were, or had been honourable.

2d .. **ተከብሩትሁ: ነበሩትሁ:** you were, or had been honourable.

1st .. **እንከብር: ነበርን:** we were, or had been honourable.

This form is used for the Subjunctive, as well as for the Indicative.

(c) *Subjunctive Mood.*

Is characterized by having the form of the Imperative Mood with the Personal Preformatives.

SINGULAR.		
Masc.	Fem.	Com.
3d pers. ደክበር : { let him be hon.	ተክበር : { let her be hon.	
2. .. ተክበር :	ተክበሩ : { mayest thou be hon.	
.. hon. 1.	ደክበሩ : { may you be hon.	
.. .. 2.	ተክበሩ : {	
1.	እክበር : { let me, may I, be hon.	
PLURAL. Common.		
3d pers. ደክበሩ :	may they, let them be honourable.	
2. .. ተክበሩ :	may you be honourable.	
1. .. እክበሩ :	may we, let us be honourable.	

NOTE 1.—As the Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, always expressing a wish, a request, or indirect command, it is natural that the Second Person Singular, in its direct form, and the same person in the Plural, is less frequently used than the remaining forms; for they use more generally the Imperative.

2. Several verbs are destitute of this form, and they use the Simple Contingent. It may therefore be of service to the Student, to give a list of those verbs of this class which have this form; and another of those which have not.

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

ለመጠ፡ ለቀጠ፡ ለበሰ፡ ለበጠ፡ ለገመ፡
ለገሰ፡ ለገደ፡ ለገጠ፡ መለከ፡ መለጠ፡
መረገ፡ መረጠ፡ መሰለ፡ መከረ፡ መከነ፡
መጠነ፡ ሠለጠ፡ ሠመረ፡ ሠረቀ፡ ሠረፀ፡
ሠቀዩ፡ ሠጠመ፡ ረከሰ፡ ረከሰ፡ ረከዘ፡
ረዘመ፡ ረገመ፡ ረገጠ፡ ረገፈ፡ ረጠበ፡ ረፈጀ፡
ረፈቀ፡ ሰለበ፡ ሰማራ፡ ሰረቀ፡ ሰረዩ፡
ሰረፈ፡ ሰቀለ፡ ሰበረ፡ ሰበቀ፡ ሰበከ፡
ሰከረ፡ ሰደበ፡ ሰገደ፡ ሰፈረ፡ ሸመቀ፡
ሸመነ፡ ሸከረ፡ ሸከረ፡ ሸገተ፡ ሸፈጠ፡
ቀለጠ፡ ቀመሰ፡ ቀሠጠ፡ ቀሠፈ፡ ቀረሰ፡
ቀረበ፡ ቀረበ፡ ቀረጠ፡ ቀረጠ፡ ቀረፈ፡

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

ለመነ፡ ለመደ፡ ለሰነ፡
ለቀመ፡ ለፀሰ፡ ለፀጠ፡
ለዘበ፡ ለጉመ፡ መለሰ፡
መረቀ፡ መረዘ፡ ሞከረ፡
መዘነ፡ መገለ፡ መገበ፡
መጉተ፡ ሰነጋ፡ ሰነፈ፡
ሰወረ፡ ሸለመ፡ ሸመተ፡
ሸሸገ፡ ሸቀበ፡ ሸጉረ፡
ሸፈነ፡ ቀለመ፡ ቀለበ፡
ቀለፈ፡ ቀቀለ፡ ቀደሰ፡
ቀራረ፡ በረታ፡ በቀለ፡
በቀለ፡ በደለ፡ በደረ፡

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

ቀ-ሰለ: ቀበረ: ቀዘነ: ቀዘፈ: ቀደመ: ቀጠለ: ቀጠረ: ቀ-ጠረ: ቀጠነ: በለጠ: በረቀ: በረደ: በሰለ: በቀለ: (grow) በተነ: በጠሰ: ተመሰ: ተረዘ: ተረፈ: ተከለ: ነቀለ: ነቀሰ: ነቀዘ: ነቀፈ: ነከረ: ነከሰ: ነደለ: ነደቀ: ነደፈ: ነገረ: ነገሠ: ነገደ: ነጠረ: ነጠቀ: ነጸረ: ነጸፈ: ነፈሰ: ነፈቀ: ነፈገ: ከመረ: ከረመ: ከበረ: ከበደ: ከደነ: ከፈለ: ከፈተ: ከፈነ: ወለሰ: ወለደ: ወረሰ: ወረደ: ወሰነ: ወሰደ: ወቀረ: ወቀጠ: ወከለ: ወደሰ: ወደቀ: ወገረ: ወገዘ: ዘለቀ: ዘመረ: ዘመደ: ዘረፈ: ዘከረ: ዘገመ: ዘገነ: ዘገደ: ዘፈረ: ደረሰ: ደረቀ: ደበቀ: ደነዘ: ደነፈ: ደከመ: ደገመ: ደፈነ: ገለጠ: ገመረ: ገመደ: ገረመ: ጉረሰ: ገረፈ: ገበረ: ገበዘ: ጉበጠ: ጉተረ: ጉተነ: ገነኘ: ገነዘ: ገዘረ: ገዘተ: ገደለ: ጉደለ: ገደመ: ገደረ: ገደፈ: ገጠመ: ገጸበ: ጠለቀ: ጠለፈ: ጠመቀ: ጠረቀ: ጠቀመ: ጠቀሰ: ጸደቀ: ጸደፈ: ፈለቀ: ፈለጠ: ፈረሰ: ፈረደ: ፈቀደ: ፈተለ: ፈተነ: ፈተገ: ፈጠረ: ፈጠነ: ፈጸመ:

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

ተከ-ሰ: ተከዘ: ትከ-ለ: ትገረ: ነወረ: ነወጠ: ወቀሰ: ወገደ: ወፈረ: ዘለፈ: ዘረጋ: ዘነመ: ዘነጋ: ዘፈነ: ደመቀ: ደረበ: ደቀ-ሰ: ደነቀ: ደወለ: ደጉ-ሰ: ደገፈ: ደፈረ: ደፈቀ: ጀመረ: ገመሰ: ገሠጸ: ጉበኘ: ገገረ: ጠረሰ: ጠቀ-ረ: ጠበሰ: ጠበቀ: ጠዩቀ: ጠገነ: ጨለመ: ጨለጠ: ጨመረ: ጨመተ: ጨረሰ: ጨበጠ: ጨነቀ: ጨከነ: ጨፈረ: ጨፈነ: ጸመደ: ጸረበ: ጸረገ: ጸዩፈ: ጸገበ: ፀነሰ: ፈለሰ: ፈለገ: ፈወሰ:

3. In verbs whose first radical has a diphthong, the latter is shortened into that diphthong which answers the sixth vowel order; *e.g.* **ደቀ-ረጥ**: “let him cut,” from **ቀ-ረጠ**: **አትጉደል**: “do not be deficient.”

4. The Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, that it yields all its forms to serve the latter, where that is deficient. So in the negative orders, prohibitions or warnings, where the Imperative cannot be used for having no Servile Preformatives; *e.g.*

አትገነር: do not tell.

አትወድቅ: do not fall.

አትገደል: do not kill.

አትቀረጥ: do not cut.

(d) *Constructive Mood.*

This is a singular Mood, which has nothing corresponding, either in our European or in the other Semitic Languages; although its form, as

far as the Simple one is concerned, answers the Ethiopic Infinitives **ገብር**: and **ገብር**:; but this Mood is not an Infinitive. It has nothing of a Substantive character; whereas the Infinitive is the first Verbal Substantive, possessing both the characters of Substantive and Verb. Nor is there any other Mood to which it exactly corresponds: neither Participle nor Gerund, nor Finite Verb, will answer it; although it may be occasionally translated by either, and sometimes by an Adverb. It occupies an intermediate station between the Infinitive and the Finite Verb; has four forms, one of which is Simple, one Augmented, and two Compound; and is flexible, like the Finite Verb, having Afformatives resembling the Suffixed Pronouns, partly of the Noun, and partly of the Verb. The Simple form is used for amplifying; the other forms, on account of the auxiliaries which are attached to them, for constituting sentences. When the nature of this Mood is understood, we hope the designation *Constructive* will be justified; not having been able to fix upon any better.

The Simple form **ከብር**: (a modification of the radix **ከብር**: "honour"), which may be considered as containing the idea of an agent, and of an action, or a concrete being, and an abstract state or condition, &c., assumes peculiar forms of Pronouns; which must not be taken as Possessive (Nominal), but as Personal (Verbal); nor as the other Verbal Suffixes which are in the Accusative; but they are Nominatives. Here it is:

α. FIRST FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Simple Form.</i>			
SINGULAR.			
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	PLURAL.
3d p. ከብር : { he being hon.	ከብረ : she being honourable.		ከብረው : they
2. ከብረህ :	ከብረሽ : thou being honourable		ከብረችሁ : you
.. hon. 1.	ከብረው : { you be-		ከብረን : we
.. .. 2.	ከብረችሁ : { ing hon.		
1.	ከብረ : I being hon.		

being honourable.

The Augmented form has become Finite by the Auxiliary **አለ**: being attached to the Simple form; but not in the same manner as it attaches itself to the Contingent, in constituting the Present and Future Tense. It serves for the Past and the Present Tenses.

β. SECOND OR AUGMENTED FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

Constructive Aorist (Present and Perfect).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.
3. ከብርዋል: { he is (was) hon. }	ከብራለች: she is (was) hon.		ከብረዋል: they
2. ከብረሃል:	ከብረኸል: thou art (wast) hon.		ከብራችኋል: you
.. hon. 1.	ከብረዋል: { you were hon. }		
.. .. 2.	ከብራችኋል: { hon. }		
1.	{ ከብርዋሁ: for ከብረ: አሁ: I am (was) h. }		ከብረናል: we

are, or were honourable.

γ. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTIVE FORMS.

N *Constructive Perfect.*

SINGULAR.	
Masc.	Fem.
3. { ከብር: { he was, or had been hon. }	ከብረ: { she was, or had been hon. }
2. { ከብረህ: { thou wast, hadst been hon. }	ከብረኸ: { thou wast, hadst been hon. }
.. hon. 1.	Common. ከብረወ: ነበረ: { you were, ከብራችሁ: ነበራችሁ: { had been hon. }
.. .. 2.	
1.	ከብረ: ነበርሁ: I was, had been h.
PLURAL.	
Common.	
3d pers. ከብረወ: ነበረ: they	} were, or had been honourable.
2d .. ከብራችሁ: ነበራችሁ: you	
1st .. ከብረን: ነበርን: we	

This form is used merely for the Indicative. Observe, also, that ነበር: may be used throughout, without any change, as remarked in the Note to the conjugation of ነበረ: p. 65.

2. *Constructive Form of Uncertainty.*

SINGULAR.

3d masc.	ከብር፡ ይሆናል፡	he may	} probably be honourable.
.. fem.	ከብራ፡ ትሆናልች፡	she may	
2d masc.	ከብረህ፡ ትሆናለህ፡	} thou mayest	
.. fem.	ከብረሽ፡ ትሆናለሽ፡		
.. hon.1.	ከብረው፡ ይሆናሉ፡	} you may	
.. .. 2.	ከብራችሁ፡ ትሆናላችሁ፡		
1st com.	ከብረ፡ እሆናለሁ፡	I may	

PLURAL.

3d masc.	ከብረው፡ ይሆናሉ፡	they	} may be honourable.
2d ..	ከብራችሁ፡ ትሆናላችሁ፡	you	
1st com.	ከብረን፡ እንሆናለን፡	we	

(e) *Imperative.*

The Imperative has two forms; one which has the first Radical in the sixth, and the second in the first order; and another which has the first Radical in the first, and the second in the sixth order. All those verbs which have the Subjunctive form, have the Imperative in the first; and the rest have it in the second form. As a specimen of the first, we take the Imperative of ከበረ፡; and of the other, that of ጠበቁ፡. It is used only in the Second Person Singular and Plural.

α. *Form ህህህ፡፡*

SINGULAR.

Masc. ከበር፡ }
Fem. ከበራ፡ } be honourable.

PLURAL.

Com. ከበረ፡ be honourable.

Diphthong form: ቀጠር፡ ቀጠራ፡ sing. ቀጠረ፡ pl. "count."

β. *Form ሀህሀ፡፡*

SINGULAR.

Masc. ጠብቅ፡ }
Fem. ጠብቁ፡ } do thou observe.

PLURAL.

Com. ጠብቁ፡ do you observe.

(f) *Infinitive Mood.*

Is formed by prefixing መ፡ to the Simple root; and it presents the two forms: መከበር፡ "to be honourable;" and መጠበቅ፡ "to observe." With Prima Rad. Diphthong: መቀጠር፡ "to number." መቀፈር፡ "to till," "dig."

(g) *Participles.*

- α. Simple: act. ከባረ፡ one who is honoured.
pass. ጥማቂ፡ any thing dipped.
Eth. pass. ክብር፡ honoured.

β. Compound Part., Adjective, or Relative Participle.

⌘ *For the Preterite*—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **P** to the Preterite.

SINGULAR.	
3. masc. Pḥnq:	he } who was
.. fem. Pḥnqḥ:	she } hon.
2. masc. Pḥnqy:	} thou who
.. fem. Pḥnqñ:	} wast hon.
.. hon. 1. Pḥnq:	} you who
.. .. 2. Pḥnqḥy:	} were hon.
1. com. Pḥnqy:	I who was hon.

PLURAL.	
3. Pḥnq:	they who were hon.
2. Pḥnqḥy:	you who were hon.
1. Pḥnqñ:	we who were hon.

⌚ *For the Present* — Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **Pḥ** to the forms of the Contingent Mood.

SINGULAR.	
3. masc. Pḥqḥnq:	he } who is
.. fem. Pḥqḥnqḥ:	she } hon.
2. masc. Pḥqḥnqy:	} thou who
.. fem. Pḥqḥnqñ:	} art hon.
.. hon. 1. Pḥqḥnq:	} you who
.. .. 2. Pḥqḥnqḥy:	} are hon.
1. com. Pḥqḥnqy:	I who am hon.

PLURAL.	
3. Pḥqḥnq:	they who are hon.
2. Pḥqḥnqḥy:	you who are hon.
1. Pḥqḥnqñ:	we who are hon.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Simple Participial forms are used in their verbal as well as in a nominal character. This is evident in Active Verbs; *e.g.* **mqḥ:** “observing,” “watching,” “guarding”; and “guardian,” “observer”: which may have its object connected with it either in the Genitive Case, when it is considered as a Noun, *e.g.* **pnḥ: mqḥ:** “a keeper, guardian, of sheep,” “shepherd”; or in the Accusative Case, **pnḥ: mqḥ:** “one keeping, watching the sheep.” The Passive forms are resolvable by the two compound forms (⌘) and (⌚) of the Passive Conjugations.

2. The two compound forms of the Relative or Adjective Participle evince their Participial character (which consists in partaking—*participiendo*—of the properties of the Verb as well as of the Noun, and forming a connecting link between both) by the position in which they stand when connected with Nouns, as Adjectives; by the treatment they experience from other Transitive Verbs, when being put into the Accusative Case; and by the influence they themselves exercise on Nouns and Pronouns. As this subject, however, belongs more properly to the Syntax, we shall leave it for the present.

ፀገዉ፡ I pounding &c. **ፀገጢ፡**

ፀገዉለሁ፡ I am (was) pounding . . **ፀገጥፆለሁ፡፡**

8. **ገለጸ፡** "he reproved," "chastised." **ሠረፀ፡** "he proceeded." The changes are the same as in No. 7.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

whose characteristic is a prolongation of the first radical, by which it is changed from the first into the fourth form. Its force is intensity of the idea of the original form.

ሳደበ፡ he scolded exceedingly.

Its difference in form, from the First Conjugation, is as follows:

1. It retains the first long radical throughout; on this account, it
2. Has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive, but is served by the Contingent Mood.
3. In the Imperative, the first radical is long, of the fourth: the second short, of the sixth order.
4. In the Infinitive, the first radical is of the fourth; the second, as in all the conjugations, of the first order.

The mode of conjugating being the same as in the first species, we shall give only the Third Person, Singular and Plural, in those Moods and Tenses which have it.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers.	SINGULAR.	|	3d pers.	PLURAL.
ሳደበ፡	he scolded exceedingly &c.	|	ሳደቡ፡	they scolded exceedingly &c.

Present and Future.

ያሳድባል፡	{ he scolds exceedingly &c.	|	ያሳድባሉ፡	{ they scold exceed- ingly &c.
---------------	--------------------------------	--	---------------	-----------------------------------

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

ያሳድብ፡	|	ያሳድቡ፡
--------------	--	--------------

Compound Preterite.

ያሳድብ፡ ነበረ፡	{ he scolded, had scolded, was scold- ing, would scold, would have scold- ed exceedingly.	|	ያሳድቡ፡ ነበሩ፡፡	he scolded, &c.
-------------------	---	--	--------------------	-----------------

Compound of Uncertainty.

ያሳድብ፡	{ he may (perhaps) scold	|	ያሳድቡ፡ ይሆናሉ፡፡
ይሆናል፡	{ exceedingly &c.	|	

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ሳድቦ: he, scolding exceedingly &c. | ሳድበው: they scolding &c.

Augmented Present and Perfect (Aorist).

ሳድብዋል: {	he scolds (scolded)	|	ሳድበዋል: they scold, &c.
	exceedingly, &c.		

Comp. Preterite.

ሳድቦ: ነበረ: {	he scolded, was scold-	|	ሳድበው: ነበረ: they scolded, &c.
	ing exceedingly, &c.		

Comp. of Uncertainty.

ሳድቦ: ይሆናል: he may (perhaps) scold exceedingly, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ሳድብ: {	do thou scold.	|	ሳድቡ: {	do you scold exceedingly,
Fem. ሳድቢ: }				&c.

6. INFINITIVE.

መሳድብ: to scold, the scolding.

7. PARTICIPLES.

1. *Nominascens*.—ሳደቢ: “a scolder,” “one who scolds exceedingly.”2. *Adject*.—የመሳደብ: &c. “one who scolds exceedingly,” &c.

Of course, there is no Passive Participle of this form.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Active and Transitive Voice.—The characteristic is an **ኣ**: prefixed to the radix; which puts the Personal Preformatives, excepting **ኣ**:, into the fourth order.*Form* ኣከበረ: “he honoured.”

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ኣከበረ: he honoured, &c. as ከበረ: | ኣከበሩ: they honoured, &c.

Present and Future.

የከበራል: he honours.	|	የከበራሉ: they honour, &c.
ተከበራለች: she honours, &c.		

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

የከብር: ተከብር: &c. &c.	|	የከብሩ: &c.
---------------------	--	-----------

SINGULAR. *Compound Preterite.* PLURAL.

ያከብር፡ ነበረ፡ &c. | **ያከብሩ፡ ነበሩ፡** &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

ያከብር፡ ይሆናል፡ he may (perhaps) honour, &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያከበር፡ may he (let him) honour, &c. as **ይከበር፡** &c.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

አክብር፡ he honouring. አክብረ፡ she honouring. አክብረህ፡ } thou honouring. አክብረሽ፡ } አክብረው፡ } you honouring. አክብረችሁ፡ } አክብረ፡ I honouring.	አክብረው፡ they honouring. አክብረችሁ፡ you honouring. አክብረን፡ we honouring.
--	---

Augmented Present and Preterite.

አክብርዋል፡ { he honours (ho- noured) &c.	አክብረዋል፡ { they honour (ho- noured) &c.
---	--

Compound Preterite.

አክብር፡ ነበረ፡ he honoured, &c. | **አክብረው፡ ነበሩ፡** they honoured, &c.

SINGULAR. 5. IMPERATIVE. PLURAL.

Masc. አክበር፡ } Fem. አክበረ፡ } do thou honour.	አክበሩ፡ do ye honour.
---	----------------------------

6. INFINITIVE.

ማክበር፡ to honour, the honouring.

7. PARTICIPLES.

1. *Nominal*, **አክባሪ፡** the honourer, one who honours.
2. *Adject.* { **የሚያከብር፡** he who honours.
ያከበረ፡ he who honoured.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ተሰደበ፡ "he was reviled."

Its nature is pre-eminently *Passive* (objective), and reflective. Its characteristic is the Preformative **ተ**: to the original form in the Preterite, Constructive, and Imperative, which, in the same manner as in the cognate languages, gives way to the other Preformatives in the process of conjugations. The second radical remains unchanged in all the moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive Moods. So does also the first radical in the Infinitive Mood. These two remarks serve to distinguish this and the other *Passive* Conjugations from the rest.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
 3d pers. masc. **ተሰደብ**: he was reviled. | **ተሰደቡ**: they were reviled,
 &c. &c., the same as **ከበረ**: &c.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d pers. masc. ይሰደገል :	{ he is (will be) reviled.	3d p. c. ይሰደገሉ :
		{ they are (will be) reviled.
... fem. ተሰደገለች :	{ she is (will be) reviled.	
2d pers. masc. ተሰደገለህ :	{ thou art (wilt be) reviled.	ተሰደገላችሁ :
... fem. ተሰደገብዋለሽ :	{ (wilt be) reviled.	{ you are (will be) reviled.
... hon. 1. ይሰደገሉ :	{ you are (will be) reviled.	
... 2. ተሰደገላችሁ :	{ (will be) reviled.	
1st .. com. እሰደገለሁ : I am (shall be)		እንሰደገለን :
		{ we are (shall be) reviled.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d pers. masc. ይሰደብ :	fem. ተሰደብ :	ይሰደቡ :
2d ተሰደብ :	fem. ተሰደቢ :	ተሰደቡ :
.. .. hon. 1. ይሰደብ :	2. ተሰደብ :	
1st .. com. እሰደብ :		እንሰደብ :

Compound Preterite.

SINGULAR.
 3d pers. masc. **ይሰደብ ነበረ**: he was (would be), had been (would have been), reviled,
 &c. &c.

PLURAL.
ይሰደቡ ነበሩ: they were (would be), had been (would have been),
 reviled, &c. &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d pers. masc. ይሰደብ ይሆናል :	{ he may (per- haps) be re- viled, &c. &c.	ይሰደቡ ይሆናሉ :
		{ they may (per- haps) be re- viled, &c. &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		Simple.	PLURAL.	
3d p. masc.	ተሰድዮ:	he being reviled.	ተሰድበው:	they being
... fem.	ተሰድባ:	she being reviled.		
2d .. masc.	ተሰድበህ:	} thou being re- viled.	ተሰድባችሁ:	you being
... fem.	ተሰድበሽ:			
... hon. 1.	ተሰድበው:	} you being reviled.		} reviled.
... .. 2.	ተሰድባችሁ:			
1st.. com.	ተሰድቤ:	I being reviled.	ተሰድበን:	we being

Augmented Aorist.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
3d p. m.	ተሰድብዋል:	he } is	ተሰድብዋል:	they
... f.	ተሰድባለች:	she } (was)		
2d .. m.	ተሰድበሃል:	} thou art (wast)	ተሰድባችኋል:	you are (were) reviled.
... f.	ተሰድበሻል:			
... hon. 1.	ተሰድብዋል:	} you are (were)		} reviled.
... .. 2.	ተሰድባችኋል:			
1st.. com.	ተሰድብዋለሁ:	{ I am (was)	ተሰድብናል:	we

SINGULAR.		Compound Preterite.	PLURAL.	
3d p. m.	ተሰድዮ:	{ he was (had been) reviled, &c. &c. &c.	ተሰድበው:	{ they were (had been) reviled, &c. &c.
	ነበረ:		ነበሩ:	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	ተሰድብ:	{ do thou be (sub- mit to being) re- viled.	ተሰድቡ:	{ do you be (submit to being) reviled.
Fem.	ተሰድቢ:			

6. INFINITIVE.

መሰድብ: to be reviled, the being reviled.

7. PARTICIPLES.

- (a) *Nominal*, ተሰደቢ: one who is reviled.
 (b) *Relative*, α. *Perf.* የተሰደበ: he who was (has been) reviled.
 β. *Pres.* የሚሰደብ: he who is reviled.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

አናገረ: He made (caused to) speak.

The nature of this verb is doubly transitive, or *causative*. It combines the characteristics of both the second and the third conjugations; the prolongation of the first radical giving intensity to the transitively (by **አ:**) augmented form.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. masc.	አናገረ:	he made	አናገረ: they made
... fem.	አናገረች:	she made	
2d .. masc.	አናገርህ:	thou madest	አናገረችሁ: you made
... fem.	አናገርሽ:		
... hon. 1.	አናገረ:	} you made	
... .. 2.	አናገረችሁ:		
1st.. com.	አናገርሁ:	I made	አናገርን: we made

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ያናገራል:	he } makes	ያናገራሉ: they	
... fem.	ታናገራለች:	she } (will make)		
2d .. masc.	ታናገራለህ:	thou makest	ታናገራላችሁ: you	
... fem.	ታናገርሃለሽ:	(will make)		
... hon. 1.	ያናገራል:	} you make		
... .. 2.	ታናገራላችሁ:			
1st.. com.	አናገራለሁ:	{ I make (shall make)	አናናገራለን: we	make (will, shall make) to speak.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers.	ያናገር: fem. ታናገር:	ያናገረ:
2d ..	ታናገር: fem. ታናገሪ:	ታናገረ:
.. hon. 1.	ያናገረ: 2. ታናገረ:	አናናገረ::
1.	አናገር:	

Compound Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d pers. masc.	he made (would make), had made (would have made) to speak, &c.	ያናገረ: ነበረ:	{ they made &c. to speak &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

የፍገር፡ ይህፍል፡ { he may (per-
haps) make to
speak, &c.

PLURAL.

የፍገሩ፡ ይህፍሉ፡ { they may (per-
haps) make to
speak, &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.*3d p. masc. **አፍገር፡** he... fem. **አፍገራ፡** she2d .. masc. **አፍገረህ፡**... fem. **አፍገረሽ፡**... hon. 1. **አፍገረው፡**... 2. **አፍገራችሁ፡**1st.. com. **አፍገረ፡** I

አፍገረው፡ they
አፍገራችሁ፡ you
አፍገረን፡ we

making to speak.

making
to speak.*Compound Aorist.*

3d pers. masc.

አፍገርዋል፡ { he makes (made) to
speak, &c.

አፍገረዋል፡ { they make (made) to
speak, &c.

Compound Preterite.

አፍገር፡ ነበረ፡ { he made (had
made) to speak, &c.

አፍገረው፡ ነበረ፡ { they made (had made)
to speak, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አፍገር፡** { do thou make toFem. **አፍገራ፡** { speak.**አፍገሩ፡** do ye make to speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማፍገር፡ to make or cause to speak; the causing to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

(a) *Simple*, **አፍገሪ**: one who makes to speak.(b) *Relative*,α. *Perfect*, **የፍገረ**: he who made to speak, &c.β. *Present*, **የሚፍገር**: he who makes to speak, &c.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

ተፍገረ፡ "He spoke."

The nature and force of this species is intensity, continuation, sometimes reciprocity, either of the original, or of the Fourth Conjugation. It

combines the properties of the Second (long first radical) and Fourth (Preformative **ṭ**;) Conjugations. The **ṭ** is found in the Preterite, Imperative, and Constructive Moods: the first radical is long throughout: the second is of the first order, in all moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ṭṭṭṭ: he spoke, &c.

PLURAL.

ṭṭṭṭ: they spoke, &c.*Present and Future.*

ṭṭṭṭ: he speaks (will speak) &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they speak (will speak) &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ṭṭṭṭ: fem. **ṭṭṭṭ**: &c.**ṭṭṭṭ**: &c. &c.*Compound Preterite.*

ṭṭṭṭ: **ṭṭṭṭ**: he spoke &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: they spoke &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

ṭṭṭṭ: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { he may (per- | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they may (per-
haps) speak &c. | haps) speak &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ṭṭṭṭ: he speaking &c.**ṭṭṭṭ**: they speaking &c.*Compound Aorist.*

ṭṭṭṭ: he speaks or spoke &c. | **ṭṭṭṭ**: they speak or spoke &c.

Compound Preterite.

ṭṭṭṭ: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { he spoke (had | **ṭṭṭṭ**: **ṭṭṭṭ**: { they spoke (had
spoken), &c. | spoken), &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ṭṭṭṭ**: } do thou speak.
Fem. **ṭṭṭṭ**: }

ṭṭṭṭ: do ye speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

ṭṭṭṭ: to speak, the speaking.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ṭṭṭṭ**: a speaker, speaking.*Relative (a) Perfect*, **ṭṭṭṭ**: he who spoke.*(b) Present*, **ṭṭṭṭ**: he who speaks.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተምዋከረ: he tried.**ተምዋገጥ**: he disputed.

No other instances of this conjugation present themselves to us, except these two. The peculiarity of this conjugation, i.e. the change of a radical of the first or of the fourth order into two letters, into the radical of the sixth, with the **ዋ**: of the fourth order, is so frequent in Shoa in other instances, that we apprehend the use of this conjugation itself may be of no small extent. Its force differs not from the sixth conjugation, with which it is identical, except in the change of the first radical.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

ተምዋከረ: he tried, &c.

PLURAL.

ተምዋከሩ: they tried, &c.*Present and Future.***ይምዋከራል**: he tries (will try) &c. | **ይምዋከራሉ**: they try (will try) &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.***ይምዋከር**: &c.**ይምዋከሩ**: &c.*Compound Preterite.***ይምዋከር**: ነበረ: he tried, &c.**ይምዋከሩ**: ነበሩ: they tried, &c.*Compound of Uncertainty.***ይምዋከር**: { he probably has
ይሆናል: { tried, &c.**ይምዋከሩ**: { they probably have
ይሆናሉ: { tried, &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ተምዋክር: he trying, &c.**ተምዋክረው**: they trying, &c.*Compound Aorist.***ተምዋክርዋል**: he tries or tried &c.**ተምዋክረዋል**: { they try or tried,
&c.*Compound Preterite.***ተምዋክር**: { he tried, had tried,
ነበረ: { &c.**ተምዋክረው**: { they tried, had
ነበሩ: { tried, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ተምዋከር**: { do thou try.
Fem. **ተምዋከሪ**: }**ተምዋከሩ**: do ye try.

6. INFINITIVE.

መምዋከር: to try, the trying, trial.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ተምዋካሪ**: one who tries.

Relative (a) *Perfect*, **የተምዋከረ**: he who tried, &c.
 (b) *Present*, **የሚምዋክር**: he who tries, &c.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

አስከበረ: He caused to honour, caused to be honoured.

This is the most frequent form for the causative voice. Its characteristic is the prefixion of the two letters **አስ**: to the original form, with which it has nearly the same mode of conjugation. The second radical is, in the Contingent and all other forms derived from it, put into the sixth order. But it has no Subjunctive form. The Imperative has the Contingent form of the radicals. The Infinitive has the first and second radicals in the first order. The Personal Preformatives are put before the **አስ**: absorbing the **አ**:

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አስከበረ: he caused to be hon. &c.

3d pers.

PLURAL.

አስከበሩ: { they caused to be
honoured, &c.*Present and Future.*3d p. masc. **ያስከብራል**: he causes &c.... fem. **ታከከብራለች**: she causes &c.2d.. masc. **ታስከብራለህ**: } thou causest &c.... fem. **ታስከብርሃለሽ**: }... hon. 1. **ያስከብራሉ**: } you cause &c.... 2. **ታስከብራላችሁ**: }1st.. com. **አስከብራለሁ**: I cause &c.

to be honoured.

ያስከብራሉ: they**ታስከብራላችሁ**: you**አናስከብራለን**: we

cause to be honoured.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ያስከብር**: fem. **ታስከብር**:2d .. **ታስከብር**: fem. **ታስከብሪ**:... hon. 1. **ያስከብሩ**: 2d **ታስከብሩ**:1st.. **አስከብር**:

PLURAL.

ያስከብሩ:**ታስከብሩ**:**አናስከብር**:

3d pers. masc.

*Compound Preterite.***ያስከብሩ**: { he caused, &c. to be
ነበሩ: } honoured, &c.**ያስከብሩ**: { they caused, &c. to be
ነበሩ: } honoured, &c.

Compound of Probability.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
ያስከብር:	he (probably) may	ያስከብሩ:	they (probably) may
ይሆናል:	cause to be hon. &c.	ይሆናሉ:	cause to be hon. &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

አስከብር:	{ he causing to be ho- noured, &c.	አስከብሩ:	{ they causing to be honoured, &c.
---------------	---------------------------------------	---------------	---------------------------------------

Compound Aorist.

አስከብርዋል:	{ he causes (caused) to be hon. &c.	አስከብሩዋል:	{ they cause (caused) to be hon. &c.
-----------------	--	-----------------	---

Compound Preterite.

አስከብሩ:	{ he caused (had caused) to be honoured, &c.	አስከብሩ:	{ they caused (had caused) to be ho- noured, &c.
---------------	---	---------------	--

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አስከብር:	do thou cause to	አስከብሩ:	do ye cause to be hon.
Fem. አስከብሪ:	be honoured.		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስከበር: to cause to be honoured, the causing to be honoured, the procuring honour.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አስከብሪ:** one who causes to be honoured.

Relative,

(a) *Pret.* **ያስከበረ:** he who caused &c.

(b) *Pres.* **ያሚያስከብር:** he who causes to be honoured, &c.

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

አስመሳል: He caused to resemble; he flattered, dissimulated.

The difference of this conjugation from the preceding is so slight, that we do not find it necessary to give its flexion: it consists merely in the second radical being constantly long, except in the Constructive: in all the rest it is similar to the preceding **አስከበረ**: As to the third radical **ል**: we refer to the deviations marked under the First Conjugation, No. 1. This conjugation, by the way, is very rare.

J. TENTH CONJUGATION.

አስተነገረ: He made to speak.

The force of this conjugation is Causative, as the two preceding ones. The difference consists in the form being augmented by three letters, **አስተ:** instead of the two **አስ::**

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

አስተነገረ: he made to speak, &c.

PLURAL.

አስተነገሩ: they made to speak, &c.*Present and Future.***ያስተነገራል:** { he makes &c. to
speak, &c.**ያስተነገራሉ:** { they make &c. to
speak, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ያስተነገር: &c.**ያስተነገሩ:** &c.*Compound Preterite.***ያስተነገር፡ነበረ:** &c. { he made &c.
to speak, &c.**ያስተነገሩ፡ነበረ:** { they made &c.
to speak, &c.*Compound of Probability.***ያስተነገር:** } he may probably
ይሆናል: } make to speak, &c.**ያስተነገሩ:** { they may probably
ይሆናሉ: } cause to speak, &c.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

አስተነገር: he causing to speak, &c.**አስተነገረው:** they causing to
speak, &c.*Compound Aorist.***አስተነገርዋል:** { he causes (caused)
to speak, &c.**አስተነገረዋል:** { they cause (caused)
to speak, &c.*Compound Preterite.***አስተነገር፡ነበረ:** { he caused &c.
to speak, &c.**አስተነገረው፡ነበረ:** { they caused &c. to
speak, &c.

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያስተነገር: { may he cause to speak,
&c. the same as
ያክበር::**ያስተነገሩ:** { may they cause to
speak, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አስተነገር:** { do thou makeFem. **አስተነገሪ:** { to speak.**አስተነገሩ:** do you make to speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስተንገረ: to cause (the causing) to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አስተንጋሪ**: one who causes to speak.

Relative Perfect, **ያስተነገረ**: he who caused to speak.

Present, **የሚያስተንገር**: he who causes to speak.

K. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተዋዋረደ: He was entirely humbled; humbled himself entirely.

The force of this conjugation is intensity added to forms D and F: its characteristic is reduplication of the prolonged first radical with the objective **ተ**: prefixed. As its conjugation is the same as **ተናገረ**: we abstain from detailing it.

L. TWELFTH CONJUGATION.

ሰገበረ: Broke to pieces.

The force of this conjugation is intense action, represented by a reduplication of the second radical.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

ሰገበረ: he broke to pieces, &c.

PLURAL.

ሰገበሩ: they broke to pieces, &c.

Present and Future.

ያሰገብራል: { he breaks, &c. to
pieces, &c.

ያሰገቡሉ: { they break, &c. to
pieces, &c.

3d pers. masc.

ያሰገብር: &c.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

ያሰገብሩ: &c.

Compound Preterite.

ያሰገብር፡ ነበረ: { he broke, &c.
to pieces, &c.

ያሰገቡር፡ ነበሩ: { they broke, &c.
to pieces, &c.

Compound of Probability.

ያሰገብር፡ ይሆናል: { he may pro-
bably break
to pieces, &c.

ያሰገቡሩ፡ ይሆናሉ: { they may probably
break to pieces, &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. m.	ይስጥብር: may he	ይስጥብሩ: may they	} break to pieces.
.. .. f.	ትስጥብር: may she	ትስጥብሩ: may you	
2d p. m.	ትስጥብር: } mayest thou		
.. .. f.	ትስጥብር: }		
.. hon. 1.	ይስጥብሩ: may you		
.. hon. 2.	ትስጥብሩ: may you		
1st .. .	እስጥብር: may I	እንስጥብር: may we	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc. ሰጥብር: he breaking to pieces, &c. | ሰጥብረው: { they breaking to pieces, &c.

Compound Aorist.

ሰጥብርዋል: { he breaks (broke) to pieces, &c. | ሰጥብረዋል: { they break (broke) to pieces, &c.

Compound Preterite.

ሰጥብር: ነበረ: { he broke, &c. to pieces, &c. | ሰጥብረው: ነበረ: { they broke &c. to pieces, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ሰጥብር: } do thou break to pieces, &c. | ሰጥብሩ: do ye break to pieces, &c.
Fem. ሰጥብሩ: }

6. INFINITIVE.

መስጥብር: to break to pieces.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ሰጥብሩ: one who breaks to pieces.

Rel. Pret. የሰጥብሩ: he that broke to pieces.

Pres. የሚሰጥብር: he that breaks to pieces.

M. THIRTEENTH CONJUGATION.

አደራረገ: He performed great works.

The force of this conjugation is an addition of intensity to the Third Conjugation: this is represented by a reduplication and prolongation of the second radical, with the Preformative አ::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d pers. masc.	አደራረገ: { he performed great works, &c.	አደራረጉ: { they performed great works, &c.	

SINGULAR.		<i>Present and Future.</i>	PLURAL.
3d pers. masc.	የደራርጋል :	{ he performs, &c. great works, &c.	የደራርጋሉ : { they perform great works, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

*Simple.***የደራርግ** : &c.**የደራርጉ** : &c.*Compound Preterite.*

የደራርግ ነበረ :	{ he performed &c. great works, &c.	የደራርጉ ነበረ :	{ they performed &c. great works, &c.
--------------------	--	--------------------	---

Compound of Probability.

የደራርግ :	{ he may probably per- form great works.	የደራርጉ :	{ they may probably perform great works, &c.
----------------	---	----------------	--

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

የደራርግ :	{ may he perform great works, &c.	የደራርጉ :	{ may they perform great works, &c.
----------------	--------------------------------------	----------------	--

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

አደራርግ :	{ he performing great works.	አደራርገው :	{ they performing great works, &c.
----------------	---------------------------------	-----------------	---------------------------------------

Compound Aorist.

አደራርጋል :	{ he performs (per- formed) great works &c.	አደራርገዋል :	{ they perform (per- formed) great works, &c.
-----------------	---	------------------	---

Compound Preterite.

አደራርግ ነበረ :	{ he performed, &c. great works &c.	አደራርገው ነበረ :	{ they performed, &c. great works, &c.
--------------------	---	---------------------	--

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አደራርግ :	{ dothou perform	አደራርጉ :	{ do ye perform great
Fem. አደራርገ :	{ great works.		{ works.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማደራረግ : to perform (the performance of) great works.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አደራራገ** : one who performs great works.*Rel. Perf.* **የደራረገ** : he who performed great works.*Pres.* **የሚደራርግ** : he who performs great works.

N. FOURTEENTH CONJUGATION.

ተመካከረ: He counselled with others, gave and took advice, advised frequently.

ተመለሰ: He went and returned, went to and fro, *i.e.* walked.

The force of this conjugation is double intensity, reciprocity, and repetition of the action expressed in the verb. This is represented by reduplication and prolongation of the second radical. Its flexion and conjugation is quite the same as in the Sixth Conjugation.

O. FIFTEENTH CONJUGATION.

ተናገረ: He conversed with another, spoke frequently.

The nature of this conjugation is the same as the preceding; and as to form, it differs only in having the first radical long, in conformity with the sixth species, which it resembles entirely in flexion and conjugation.

P. Q. R. S. SIXTEENTH, SEVENTEENTH, EIGHTEENTH, & NINETEENTH CONJUGATIONS.

ደነዘዘ: "To be stiff," "obdurate." *Intransitive.*

አደነዘዘ: "To stiffen." *Transitive.*

ተመለሰሰ: "He returned," "was returned." *Passive, & Reflective.*

ተሸማመመ: "He reviled." *Intensive.*

The chief peculiarity of these four species consists in doubling the third radical, or gemination.—As we shall have an opportunity of treating more fully upon the Geminant Verbs, we merely mention these forms here; and pass on to the remaining forms of the Regular Triliteral Verb.

T. TWENTIETH CONJUGATION.

አደናገረ: He talked one out of any thing, dissuaded.

This and the Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth species are rather remarkable for their singular Preformatives, which are not in use in the cognate dialects. The conjugation of **አደናገረ:** is similar to that of **አደራረገ:** we therefore proceed.

U. TWENTY-FIRST CONJUGATION.

አወሸፍገረ: He folded his hands.

In what the peculiar force of this species consists, we cannot determine.

V. TWENTY-SECOND CONJUGATION.

ፈተተለ: He rubbed thin between his fingers.

The reduplication of the second and of the third radical, which consti-

tutes the peculiar character of this species, serves to express, as a sort of diminution, a peculiar modification of the original action.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ἔτατα: { he rubbed thin between
his fingers, &c.

ἔτασαν: they rubbed thin, &c.

Present and Future.

ἐτάτα: he rubs thin, &c.

ἐτάσαν: they rub thin, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers. masc.

ἐτάτα: &c.

ἐτάσαν: &c.

Compound Preterite.

ἐτάτα: { he rubbed (&c.) thin,
ἰνέ: { &c.

ἐτάσαν: { they rubbed (&c.)
ἰνέ: { thin, &c.

Compound of Probability.

ἐτάτα: { he may probably
εὐφα: { rub thin, &c. &c.

ἐτάσαν: { they may probably
εὐφασαν: { rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ἐτάτα: may he rub thin, &c.

ἐτάσαν: may they rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

ἔτασαν: he rubbing thin, &c.

ἔτασαν: they rubbing thin &c.

Compound Aorist.

ἔτασαν: { he rubs (rubbed)
thin, &c.

ἔτασαν: { they rub (rubbed)
thin, &c.

Compound Preterite.

ἔτασαν: { he rubbed (was rub-
ἰνέ: { bing) thin, &c.

ἔτασαν: { they rubbed (were
ἰνέ: { rubbing) thin, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ἔτατα**: { do thou rub

Fem. **ἔτασε**: { thin, &c.

ἔτασαν: do you rub thin, &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

ἐτάσαν: to rub thin, the rubbing thin between the fingers.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple,

ἔτασαν: one who rubs thin, &c.

Relative Perf.

ἔτασαν: he who has rubbed thin, &c.

Pres.

ἐτάσαν: he who rubs thin, &c. &c.

W. TWENTY-THIRD CONJUGATION.

ṭṭṭṭṭṭ: It was rubbed thin between the fingers.

This is a Passive derivation from the preceding conjugation, to be treated entirely as the Fourth Conjugation.

X. TWENTY-FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ḥḥḥḥḥḥ: It shone, glittered, sparkled, resplended.

This form seems to be derived from **ḥḥḥ**: "to fulminate," "to lighten"; and the Preformative **ḥḥḥ**—: appears to have either a diminutive or a frequentative effect.

2. *Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of the Triliteral Verbs.*

Having thus exhibited the conjugation of the various forms of the Regular and Perfect Triliteral Verb, we now proceed to the consideration of the Imperfect Forms of Triliteral, of Perfect and Imperfect Forms of Biliteral, and of the various forms of Pluriliteral Verbs. We shall endeavour to point out, especially by paradigms, where it is necessary, and the peculiarities in the flexion and conjugation of each; not in order to accumulate materials for the memory, but to facilitate the comprehension of the structure of this part of the language. We notice,

I. TRILITERAL VERBS *whose First Conjugation is A (ḥ: or ʕ::)*

The chief peculiarity of these verbs consists in the liability under which they are to have the first radical contracted with every Preformative acceding to the Verb, according to the rule laid down in Part I. Chap. VII. 2. A. B. For the purpose of exemplifying, we select the two Verbs **ḥḥḥ**: "he believed," and **ḥḥḥ**: "he passed."

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple Form, **ḥḥḥ**: He believed.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite. Regular, as **ḥḥḥ**:*Present and Future*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
3d p. masc.	ḥḥḥ	he	} believes, will	ḥḥḥ	they believe, will
.. .. fem.	ḥḥḥ	she			
2d .. masc.	ḥḥḥ		} thou believest, wilt	ḥḥḥ	you believe, will
.. .. fem.	ḥḥḥ				
.. .. hon. 1.	ḥḥḥ		} you believe, will		
.. .. 2.	ḥḥḥ				
1st.. com.	ḥḥḥ	I believe, shall		ḥḥḥ	we believe, shall

2. CONTINGENT,

As the Indicative Present, without the Auxiliary **አለ**:

SINGULAR.		3. SUBJUNCTIVE.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ደመን : may he	} believe	ደመኑ : may they believe.
.. .. fem.	ትመን : may she		
2d .. masc.	ትመን : } mayest thou		ትመኑ : may you believe.
.. .. fem.	ትመን : }		
.. .. hon. 1.	ደመኑ : }		
.. 2.	ትመኑ : } may you		
1st. . com.	አመን : may I		አንመን : may we believe.

3d pers. masc.

አምና: he believing, &c.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አምነው: they believing, &c.Regular; as, **ከብር**: &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አመን**: } do thou believe! | **አመኑ**: do ye believe!

Fem. **አመን**: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ማመን: to believe, the believing, faith, trust.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አማን**: one who believes, a believer.*Relative Perfect*, **ዋመነ**: he who believed. **ዋመነች**: she who believed, &c*Relative Present*, **ዋሚዋመን**: he who believes, &c.**ዋሚትዋመን**: she who believes, &c.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Objective Voice.***ትመነ**: He was believed, accredited, was trustworthy, faithful, entrusted himself.

Flexion and Conjugation according to the Fourth Conjugation of the Regular Trilateral Verb; with the exception, that the characteristic **ተ**: because it has joined to itself the vowel of the first radical, is not dropped, but retained in all the forms.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ትመነ: he was trusted, &c.

PLURAL.

ትመኑ: they were trusted, &c.*Present and Future.***ይትመናል**: he is trusted, &c.**ይትመናሉ**: they are trusted, &c.

SINGULAR.	2. CONTINGENT.	PLURAL.
ይተመን : &c.	| ይተመኑ : &c.	
	3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.	
3d pers. masc.	4. CONSTRUCTIVE.	
ተሞኖ : he being trusted, &c.	| ተሞኑው : they being trusted, &c.	
	5. IMPERATIVE.	
Masc. ተመን: }	| ተመኑ : be ye faithful.	
Fem. ተመን : }		
	6. INFINITIVE.	
መተመን : to be believed, faithfulness, &c.		
	7. PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Simple</i> , ተማን : one who is believed.		
<i>Rel. Pret.</i> የተመነ : he who was believed, faithful, &c.		
<i>Present</i> , የሚተመን : he who is believed, &c.		

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አሳመነ**: He made believe, persuaded.

This form corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb **አስከበረ**:: The first radical **አ**: is absorbed by the characteristic Pre-formative **አስ**:: No Subjunctive form.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አስተመነ**: He accredited, attested, entrusted.

This form, which joins the characteristics of the Objective and of the Transitive Voice in nature and form, answers the Tenth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verb.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተላለፈ**: Passed and repassed, trespassed, varied.

In this form, which corresponds with the Fourteenth Conjugation of the Regular Triliteral Verb, the first radical, **አ**:, is dropped; but the **ተ**: is retained when Prefixes are joined; *e.g.* Contingent, **የተላለፈ**:: Infinitive, **መተላለፍ**::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative and Intensive Voice.***አስተላለፈ:** He made pass in different ways.In this form the Causative **አስ:** is joined to the preceding Conjugation.

II. SECOND CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Trilateral Geminants.

(See page 56, II.)

These verbs seem to have been derived from Biliterals which are lost, but whose second radical has been doubled. (See Part. I. Ch. VII. 2. D.) In conjugating these verbs, the geminant letters are often contracted into one; but that letter, although the Abyssinians have no mark for distinguishing the accent, shows its origin, by having the tone.

It will be observed, that there are, among the ten different Conjugations of this class, four which have the **ኝ:**, either with the Transitive **አ:**, or the Intransitive **ተ:** prefixed.

In looking at the numerous verbs of this class, mentioned in the note, page 56, it will be seen that all classes of letters, except the gutturals and the vowel letters, are subject to gemination.

The general mode of conjugating being the same in this as in all other classes of verbs, attention is to be paid especially to those forms which have gemination, and to those which have the contraction.

After these preliminary remarks, we proceed to give the Paradigms.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ለቀቀ: *neut.* He went away; *act.* He dismissed.

Gemination exists in this Conjugation—in the Indicative, Preterite, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive and Simple, and Relative Preterite Participles: *Contraction* in the remaining Moods and Tenses.

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. masc.	ለቀቀ: he dismissed.	ለቀቁ:	they dismissed.
.. .. fem.	ለቀቀች: she dismissed.		
2d .. masc.	ለቀቅህ: }	ለቀቅኑ:	you dismissed.
.. .. fem.	ለቀቅሽ: }		
... .. hon. 1.	ለቀቁ: }		
.. .. . 2.	ለቀቅኑ: }		
1st .. com.	ለቀቁ: I dismissed.	ለቀቁን:	we dismissed.

SINGULAR.

Present and Future.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ይለቃል:	he	} dismisses.	ይለቃሉ:	they dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ትለቃለች:	she			
2d .. masc.	ትለቃለህ:		} thou dismissest.	ትለቃለችሁ:	you dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ትለቃለሽ:				
.. .. hon. 1.	ይለቃሉ:		} you dismiss.		
.. .. hon. 2.	ትለቃለችሁ:				
1st .. com.	ኧለቃለሁ:	I dismiss.		ኧለቃለን:	we dismiss.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይለቅ:	fem. ትለቅ:	ይለቁ:
2d	ትለቅ:	fem. ትለቁ:	ትለቁ:
.... hon. 1.	ይለቁ:	2. ትለቁ:	
1.	ኧለቅ:		ኧለቁ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ይለቀቅ:	may he	} dismiss.	ይለቀቁ:	may they dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ትለቀቅ:	may she			
2d .. masc.	ትለቀቅ:			ትለቀቁ:	may you dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ትለቀቁ:	mayest thou			
.. .. hon. 1.	ይለቀቁ:	may you			
.. .. 2.	ትለቀቁ:				
1st .. com.	ኧለቀቅ:	may I		ኧለቀቁ:	may we dismiss.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc.	ለቀ:	he	} dismissing.	ለቀው:	they dismissing.
.. .. fem.	ለቃ:	she			
2d .. masc.	ለቃህ:			ለቃችሁ:	you dismissing.
.. .. fem.	ለቃሽ:	thou			
.. .. hon. 1.	ለቀው:	you			
.. .. 2.	ለቃችሁ:				
1st .. com.	ለቁ:	I		ለቁን:	we dismissing.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc.	ለቋል:	he dismisses, &c.	} you dismiss.	ለቀዋል:	they dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ለቃለች:	she dismisses.			
2d .. masc.	ለቀሃል:			ለቃችኋል:	you dismiss.
.. .. fem.	ለቃሽል:	thou dismissest.			
.. .. hon. 1.	ለቀዋል:				
.. .. 2.	ለቃችኋል:				
1st .. com.	ለቅያለሁ:	I dismiss.		ለቀናል:	we dismiss.

Compound Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

ለቆ: ነበረ: he dismissed, &c.

PLURAL.

| **ለቆው**: ነበሩ: they dismissed, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

m. **ለቆኝ**: *fem.* **ለቆቺ**: do thou dismiss. | **ለቆቱ**: do ye dismiss.

6. INFINITIVE.

መለቆኝ: To dismiss, the dismissal, dismissal.

7. PARTICIPLES.

*Simple.**Simple Act.* **ለቆኛ**: one who dismisses.*Pass.* **ለቆኛ**: one who is dismissed.*Rel. Perf.* **የለቆኛ**: he who has dismissed.*Pres.* **የሚለቅ**: he who dismisses.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active or Transitive Voice.***አረቆ**: He thinned, rarefied, refined.

We need scarcely to mention, that this form corresponds with the Third Conjugation of the Perfect Triliterals. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Simple, and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative Present, the Contingent, and Rel. Part. Present; both Gemination and Contraction in the Constructive and Imperative. Having presented a pretty full view of the preceding conjugation, it will suffice in the present one to give merely the leading types; *i.e.* 3d person masc. sing. and common plural of those paradigms which have all the Persons, besides the more simple Moods.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አረቆ: he refined, &c.

PLURAL.

| **አረቁ**: they refined.*Present and Future.***የረቃል**: he refines.| **የረቃሉ**: they refine.

2. CONTINGENT.

የረቅ:| **የረቁ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

የርቅ: may he refine.| **የርቁ**: may they refine.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

*Simple.***አርቆ**: and **አርቅ**: he refining.| **አርቆው**: and } they refining.
| **አርቅቶው**: }

Compound Aorist.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
አርቋል: and	} he refines.	አርቀዋል: and	} they refine.
አርቅዋል:		አርቅዋዋል:	

Compound Preterite.

አርቆ: ነበረ: and አርቅቆ: ነበረ::	አርቀው: ነበሩ: and አርቅቀው: ነበሩ::
he refined.	they refined.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አረቅ: and አርቅቅ: }	do thou	አረቁ: and አርቅቁ:	do ye refine.
Fem. አረቁ: and አርቅቁ: }	refine.		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማርቅቅ: to refine, the refining, rarefaction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

<i>Simple,</i>	አርቃቂ: a refiner.
<i>Rel. Perf.</i>	ያረቃቃ: he who refined.
<i>Pres.</i>	ዋሚያረቅ: he who refines.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive or Objective Voice.

ተለቀቀ: He was dismissed.

This conjugation has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood. Besides this, it is regularly conjugated, after the manner of the Fourth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verbs.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Active and Intensive Voice.

አለቀቀ: He yawned. **አሳደደ:** He persecuted.

Both in nature and form, this conjugation resembles the Fifth of the Perfect Triliteral Verb. It preserves gemination in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Perfect Participle. In the other Moods and Tenses, it is contracted.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
አሳደደ:	he persecuted.	አሳደደ:	they persecuted.

Present and Future.

ያሳደል:	he persecutes.	ያሳደሉ:	they persecute.
--------------	----------------	--------------	-----------------

3d pers. masc.
ያሳድ:

SINGULAR.

2. CONTINGENT.

| **ያሳድ:**

PLURAL.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

አሳድ: he persecuting.

| **አሳድው:** they persecuting.

Compound Aorist.

አሳድዋል: he persecutes.

| **አሳድዋል:** they persecute.

Compound Preterite.

አሳድ ነበረ: he persecuted.

| **አሳድው ነበሩ:** they persecuted.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አሳድድ:** } do thou perse-
Fem. **አሳድፎ:** } cute.

| **አሳድዱ:** do ye persecute.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማሳድድ: to persecute, the persecuting, persecution.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አሳድኛ:** a persecutor.

Rel. Perf. **ያሳደደ:** he who persecuted.

Present, **የሚያሳድ:** he who persecutes.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

Passive and Intensive Voice.

ተሳደደ: He was persecuted, habitually persecuted.

This form is conjugated after the Sixth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb; has no peculiar Subjunctive; and geminates and contracts after the third form of this class.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Causative Voice.

አስመረረ: He embittered.

Corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Triliteral Verb, and is conjugated like the first form of this class.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Intensive Voice.

አንሸተተ: He cheated.

A peculiar form, of which, as we have not hitherto had a similar one, we give here an outline.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite Regular.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አንሳተተ: he cheated.

FLURAL.

አንሳተቱ: they cheated.*Present and Future.***ያንሳታል**: he cheats.**ያንሳታሉ**: they cheat.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

ያንሳት:**ያንሳቱ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

አንሳተ: he cheating.**አንሳተው**: they cheating.*Compound Aorist.***አንሳተዋል**: he cheats.**አንሳተዋሉ**: they cheat.*Compound Perfect.***አንሳተ**: ነበረ: he cheated.**አንሳተው**: ነበሩ: they cheated.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አንሳትት**: } do thou cheat.Fem. **አንሳትኙ**: }**አንሳትቱ**: do ye cheat.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማንሳተት: to cheat, the cheating.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አንሳታኝ**: a cheater.*Rel. Perf.* **ያንሳተተ**: he who cheated.*Present*, **የሚያንሳት**: he who cheats.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተንሳተተ**: He was cheated.

This is the Passive form of the preceding derivation; and, in gemination, is regulated by the Third Conjugation of this class.

I. K. NINTH AND TENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Reflective Voice.***አንጠራራ**: and **ተንጠራራ**: He stretched himself.

The peculiarity of these two forms, the power of which seems to be the same, consists in the length of both the geminating letters. On account of their length, they cannot be contracted. They assume, therefore, no Subjunctive form; and the Geminants retain their length, except in the

Constructive, which retains the last radical short, and enters a **ṭ**: which servile, also, is as a paragoge added in the Infinitive; thus:

SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
አንጠራርቱ : { he stretching him- self, &c.	አንጠራርቱ : { they stretching themselves, &c.
INFINITIVE.	
ማንጠራራት : the stretching, to stretch, oneself.	

III. THIRD CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Geminants whose first radical is **አ**::

This class numbers only a few Verbs. They combine the imperfections of contraction in the beginning and at the end, *i.e.* the imperfections of both the preceding classes. For an exhibition, we select the Verbs **አዘዘ**: "he commanded," and **አመመ**: "it was painful."

This class has but four Conjugations; the first of which is Intransitive or Active; the second, Objective, Intransitive, or Reflective; the third, Causative; and the fourth, Intensive.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

አዘዘ: He commanded.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
አዘዘ : he commanded.		አዘዙ : they commanded.

Present and Future.

ያዘል : he commands,	ያዘሉ : they command.
---------------------------	----------------------------

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

3d pers. masc.	ያዝ :	ያዝሉ :
----------------	-------------	--------------

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.	ይዝዝ : may he command.	ይዝዙ : may they command.
----------------	------------------------------	--------------------------------

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	አዝ : he commanding.	አዝው : they commanding.
.. .. fem.	አዛ : she commanding.	
2d .. masc.	አዝህ : thou commanding.	አዛኝህ : you commanding.
.. .. fem.	አዝሽ :	
.. .. hon. 1.	አዝው :	} you commanding.
.. .. hon. 2.	አዛኝህ :	
1st.. com.	አዜ : I commanding.	አዝን : we commanding.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc.	አዘዋል:	he	} commands.	አዘዋል:	they command.
.. .. fem.	አዛለች:	she			
2d .. masc.	አዘሃል:		} thou commandest.	አዛችኋል:	you command.
.. .. fem.	አዘላለ:				
.. .. hon. 1.	አዘዋል:		} you command.		
.. .. hon. 2.	አዛችኋል:				
1st.. com.	አዛለሁ:	I command.		አዘናል:	we command.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	አዘዝ:	} do thou command.	አዘዙ:	do ye command.
Fem.	አዘዘዢ:			

6. INFINITIVE.

ማዘዝ: to command, the commanding, command.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አዛዢ:** one who commands, a commander.

Rel. Pret. **ያዘዘ:** he who commanded.

Present, **የሚያዝ:** he who commands.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive.

ተመመ: He felt pain, was sick. **ተዘዘ:** He was commanded, he obeyed.

In this conjugation, the **ተ** is retained throughout; and contraction of the second and third radical takes place in the Constructive Mood only. No Subjunctive. Second radical is treated as in all the Objective forms.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

አሳመመ: He made sick, gave or caused pain.

The first radical **አ**., absorbed in the Preformative **ሳ**., undergoes no further change. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Indicative, Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative, Present, and Constructive; and both Gemination and Contraction in the Contingent. Respecting the latter, we think, that when it stands by itself, it is geminated; but when it receives any addition at the beginning or at the end, it is contracted.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አስተመመ**: He nursed sick persons.

This conjugation corresponds with the Tenth of the Perfect Trilaterals, and with the Fourth of the First Class of Imperfect Trilaterals. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood.

3. Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs.

Biliteral Verbs are, in the Amharic Language, exceedingly numerous; owing especially, as will be seen hereafter, to the many contractions from Triliteral Verbs, by which they became Biliterals. In treating on these Verbs, it will be best to divide them into four distinct classes; namely, (a) Perfect; (b) Imperfect; (c) Contracted; (d) Irregular and Anomalous Biliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—*Perfect Biliterals.*

These are Verbs which have the two radical letters in the first form, do not begin with any vowel letter, and are conjugated regularly. They have this resemblance to some of the Contracted forms, that the paragodic ት: is added to most of its Infinitives, and enters into the Constructives. They are conjugated through Eight different Species or Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active, and Transitive Voice.***ገነ**: He flourished. **ደገ**: Was great. **ሰጠ**: He gave.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ሰጠ : he gave.	ሰጡ : they gave.
.. .. fem.	ሰጠች : she gave.	
2d .. masc.	ሰጠህ : } thou gavest.	ሰጣችሁ : you gave.
.. .. fem.	ሰጠሽ : }	
.. .. hon. 1.	ሰጡ : }	
.. .. 2.	ሰጣችሁ : } you gave.	
1st .. com.	ሰጠሁ : I gave.	ሰጠን : we gave.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ይሰጣል: he gives.	ይሰጣሉ: they give.
.. .. fem.	ትሰጣለች: she gives.	
2d .. masc.	ትሰጣለህ: } thou	ትሰጣላችሁ: you give.
.. .. fem.	ትሰጧለሽ: } givest.	
.. .. hon. 1.	ይሰጣሉ: } you	
.. .. . 2.	ትሰጣላችሁ: } give.	
1st .. com.	እሰጣለሁ: I give.	እንሰጣለን: we give.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይሰጥ: fem. ትሰጥ:	ይሰጡ:
2d .. masc.	ትሰጥ: fem. ትሰጭ:	ትሰጡ:
.. .. hon. 1.	ይሰጡ: 2. ትሰጡ:	
1st .. .	እሰጥ::	እንሰጥ::

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ይስጥ: may he give.	ይስጡ: may they give.
.. .. fem.	ትስጥ: may she give.	
2d .. masc.	ትስጥ: } mayest thou	ትስጡ: may you give.
.. .. fem.	ትስጭ: } give.	
.. .. hon. 1.	ይስጡ: } may you	
.. .. . 2.	ትስጡ: } give.	
1st .. com.	እስጥ: may I give.	እንስጥ: may we give.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE with ት:

3d p. masc.	ሰጥቶ: he giving.	ሰጥተዋል: they giving.
.. .. fem.	ሰጥታ: she giving.	
2d .. masc.	ሰጥታህ: } thou	ሰጥታችሁ: you giving.
.. .. fem.	ሰጥታሽ: } giving.	
.. .. hon. 1.	ሰጥተዋል: } you	
.. .. . 2.	ሰጥታችሁ: } giving.	
1st .. com.	ሰጥቼ: I giving.	ሰጥተን: we giving.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc.	ሰጥተዋል: he gives.	ሰጥተዋል: they give.
.. .. fem.	ሰጥታለች: she gives.	
2d .. masc.	ሰጥተሃል: } thou	ሰጥታችኋል: you give.
.. .. fem.	ሰጥተሻል: } givest.	
.. .. hon. 1.	ሰጥተዋል: } you	
.. .. . 2.	ሰጥታችኋል: } give.	
1st .. com.	ሰጥቻለሁ: I give.	ሰጥተናል: we give.

Simple Form without ተ: (rare).

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ድጎ: he being great.	ድጎው: they being great.
... fem.	ድጋ: she being great.	
2d .. masc.	ድጎህ: } thou being	ድጋችሁ: you being great.
... fem.	ድጎሽ: } great.	
... hon. 1.	ድጎው: } you being	
... 2.	ድጋችሁ: } great.	
1st.. com.	ድጌ: I being great.	ድገን: we being great.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ሰጥ: ሰጥ: }	do thou give.	ሰጡ: ሰጡ: do ye give.
Fem. ሰጭ: ሰጭ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

መስጠት: to give, the giving. መጠጥ: to drink, the drinking.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ሰጭ: and ሰጭ: a giver.

Rel. Pret. የሰጠ: he who gave.

Pres. የሚሰጥ: he who gives.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

አደገ: He beautified, praised. አደገ: He grew.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አደገ: he grew.	አደጉ: they grew.
... fem.	አደገች: she grew.	
2d .. masc.	አደግህ: } thou	አደጋችሁ: you grew.
... fem.	አደግሽ: } grewest.	
... hon. 1.	አደጉ: } you	
... 2.	አደጋችሁ: } grew.	
1st.. com.	አደግሁ: I grew.	አደገን: we grew.

3d pers. masc.

Present and Future.

የድጋል: he grows, &c. | የድጋል: they grow.

2. CONTINGENT.

የድግ: &c.

| የድጉ: &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE, with ት::

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አበጀት: he preparing. | አበጀተው: they preparing.

Without ት::

አድጎ: he growing. | አድገው: they growing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አድግ: } do thou grow. | አድጉ: do ye grow.
 Fem. አድጊ: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ማድግ: to grow, the growth.

ማበጀት: to prepare, the preparing, preparation.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, አደገ: one who grows. አጣጭ: one who irrigates.

Rel. Pret. ያደገ: he who grew.

Pres. የማደግ: he who grows.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Objective Voice.

ተሰጠ: He was given.

This has nothing peculiar. It is treated like other objective forms, and has the paragogic ት: uniformly.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive or Causative Voice.

አስገነ: He beautified, glorified.

Has the paragogic ት::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አስገነ: he beautified. | አስገኑ: they beautified.

Present and Future.

ያስገድ: he beautifies. | ያስገድ: they beautify.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያስገን: | ያስገኑ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያስገን: may he beautify. | ያስገኑ: may they beautify.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አስገንት: he beautifying. | አስገንተው: they beautify.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አስገን: } do thou beautify. | አስገኑ: do ye beautify.
 Fem. አስገን: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስገነት: to beautify, beautifying.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አስጋኝ**: beautifier.*Rel. Pret.* **ያስገነ**: he who beautified.*Present*, **የሚያስገነ**: he who beautifies.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive or Causative Voice.***አሳደገ**: He caused to grow, trained, reared, educated.

Differs only in form from the preceding conjugations. It has no paragogic **ት**., and is conjugated like **አሳመነ**: in the Third Conjugation of the first class of Imperfect Triliteral Verbs.

F. G. H. The Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Conjugations are treated like Triliteral Geminants.

II. SECOND CLASS.

Imperfect Biliterals, which have አ: for the first Radical Letter.

The first radical **አ**: undergoes the usual changes, as shown in the preceding conjugations. The paragogic **ት**: prevails through all the conjugations of this class, which contains but few verbs. The verb **አዋ**: "He saw," containing all the different forms of Conjugations of this class, we have selected for exhibition.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Subjective, Intransitive, and Transitive Voice.***አዋ**: He saw.

1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite.***አዋ**: he saw, &c., like **ሰጠ** ::*Present and Future.*

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ያዋል**: he sees.
 ... fem. **ትያለች**: she sees.
 ... masc. **ትያለህ**: } thou seest.
 ... fem. **ትያለሽ**: }
 ... hon. 1. **ያዋሉ**: } you see.
 ... hon. 2. **ትያላችሁ**: }
 1st.. com. **አያለሁ**: I see.

PLURAL.

ያዋሉ: they see.
ትያላችሁ: you see.
አያለን: we see.

2. CONTINGENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	የደ: fem. ተደ:	የደ::
2d .. masc.	ተደ: fem. ተደ:	ተደ:
... hon. 1.	የደ: 2. ተደ:	
1st.. com.	አደ:	አደደ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	የደ: may he see.	የደ: may they see.
... fem.	ተደ: may she see.	
2d p. masc.	ተደ: }	ተደ: may you see.
... fem.	ተደ: } mayest thou see.	
... hon. 1.	የደ: }	
... .. 2.	ተደ: } may you see.	
1st.. com.	አደ: may I see.	አንደ: may we see.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc.	አደተ: he seeing.	አደተው: they seeing.
... fem.	አደተ: she seeing.	
2d p. masc.	አደተህ: }	አደተኝህ: you seeing.
... fem.	አደተሽ: } thou seeing.	
... hon. 1.	አደተው: }	
... .. 2.	አደተኝሁ: } you seeing.	
1st.. com.	አደኛ: I seeing.	አደተን: we seeing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አደ: }	do thou see.	አደ: do ye see.
Fem. አደ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማዋት: the seeing, sight, aspect.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Relative Preterite, የደ: he who saw.

Present, የሚደ: he who sees.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, or Intransitive Voice.

ተደ: He was seen, appeared.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.		Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ተዋ :	he was seen.	ተዋ : they were seen.
.. .. fem.	ተዋኝ :	she was seen.	
2d p. masc.	ተዋህ :		ተዋኝሁ :
.. .. fem.	ተዋሽ :		
.. .. hon. 1.	ተዋ :		
.. .. 2.	ተዋኝሁ :		
1st.. com.	ተዋሁ :		ተዋኝ :
<i>Present and Future.</i>			
3d p. masc.	ይተዋል :	he is seen.	ይተዋሉ : they are seen.
.. .. fem.	ትተዋልኝ :	{ she is seen, &c.	

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ይተደ**: fem. **ትተደ**: | **ይተደ**:

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ተደተ**: he appearing, &c. | **ተደተው**: they appearing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ተደ**: } do thou appear. | **ተደ**: do ye appear.
Fem. **ተደ**: }

6. INFINITIVE.

መተዋት: to be seen, the appearing, appearance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Relative Preterite, Pተዋ: he who appeared.

Present, Pመተደ: he who appears.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

አሳዋ: He made to be seen, caused to appear, showed.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.		Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አሳዋ :	he showed.	አሳዋ : they showed.
.. .. fem.	አሳዋኝ :	she showed.	
2d p. masc.	አሳዋህ : f. አሳዋሽ :		አሳዋኝሁ :
.. .. hon. 1.	አሳዋ : 2. አሳዋኝሁ :		
.. .. com.	አሳዋሁ :		አሳዋኝ :

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	የሳዩል : he shows.	የሳዩሉ : they show.
... fem.	ተሳዩለች : she shows.	
2d p. masc.	ተሳዩህ :	ተሳዩህሁ :
... fem.	ተሳዩለሽ :	
... hon. 1.	የሳዩሉ :	
... .. 2.	ተሳዩላችሁ :	
1st. com.	አሳዩሁ :	አጥሳዩን :

3d pers. masc.

2. CONTINGENT.

የሳዩ: fem. **ተሳዩ**: &c.**የሳዩ**: &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **የሰዩ**: may he show.**የሰዩ**: &c.... fem. **ተሰዩ**: &c. may she show

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **አሳዩት**: he showing.**አሳዩተው**:... fem. **አሳዩት**:: she showing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አሰዩ**: } do thou show.Fem. **አሰዩ**: }**አሰዩ**: do ye show.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማሳዩት: To show, the showing.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.*Rel. Pret.* **የሳዩ**: he who showed.*Pres.* **የማሳዩ**: he who shows.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.***አስተዩ**: He made to be seen, brought into sight.

1. INDICATIVE PRETERITE.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አስተዩ: brought into sight.**አስተዩ**: &c.**አስተዩኝ**: &c., like the preceding.*Present and Future.***የስተዩል**: he brings into sight.**የስተዩሉ**: they bring into sight.

2. CONTINGENT.

የስተዩ: fem. **ተስተዩ**: &c. | **የስተዩ**: &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc.

አስታይተ: he bringing into sight.**አስታይተው**: { they bringing into sight.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አስታይ**: } do thou bringFem. **አስታይ**: } into sight.**አስታይ**: do ye bring into sight.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስታየት: to bring into sight.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.*Rel. Pret.* **ያስታየ**: he who brought into sight.*Pres.* **የማያስታይ**: he who brings into sight.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocative Voice.***ታየዋል**: He was with another in reciprocal sight; Looked at each other.

As this is not used in our languages in the Singular, we shall omit the translation, and give merely the requisite forms in Amharic.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ታየዋል:fem. **ታየዋለች**:**ታየዋል**:*Present and Future.***ይታያል**:fem. **ትታያለች**:**ይታያሉ**:

2. CONTINGENT.

ይታያል:fem. **ትታያል**:**ይታያሉ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ታየዋል:fem. **ታየዋለች**:**ታየዋል**:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ታየዋል**:fem. **ታየዋለች**:**ታየዋል**:

6. INFINITIVE.

መታየት: the being in sight of each other; relation to each other.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple.—None.*Rel. Pret.* **የታየዋል**:*Pres.* **የመታየት**:

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Causative and Reciprocalive.

አስተያየ: He made look at each other; placed over against each other.

Is not, in form, different from the preceding; save the prefixing of **አስ:** and the changes which that undergoes; and, that in the Imperative it has **አስተያይ::**

III. THIRD CLASS.—*Contracted Biliterals.*

This very numerous class is derived from Triliterals; which, in the Ethiopic and Tigrê Languages, have either a Vowel letter **አ:** **ዐ:** **ዮ:** or **ዐ:**, or a Guttural **ሀ:** **ሐ:** **ኀ:** or **ኸ:** contracted with the preceding letter. The letter to which their vowel has thus been joined has been made long; whilst the verb itself has become a biliteral one. In some few cases of Quadrilaterals, two contractions have been made; and we have therefore Biliteral Verbs of two long radicals. Verbs contracted from Triliterals differ, as to whether the lost letter stood formerly in the middle or at the end; and this materially determines their form of conjugation.

(aa.) Verbs with an absorbed Guttural at the end.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION:

Intransitive and Active Voice.

ገገ: *intrs.* He entered (went in). Eth. **ገብአ::**

The second radical is always long; except in the Constructive Mood, and in the Simple Participle.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		FLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ገገ: he went in.	ገቡ: they went in.
... fem.	ገገች: she went in.	
2d .. masc.	ገገህ: } thou wentst in.	ገገችህ: you went in. :
... fem.	ገገሽ: }	
... hon. 1.	ገቡ: } you went	
... .. 2.	ገገችሁ: } in.	
1st. . . .	ገገሁ: I went in.	ገገነ: we went in.

3d pers. masc.

Present and Future.

ይገገል: he goes in, &c. | **ይገገሉ:** they go in, &c. :

2. CONTINGENT.

ይገገ: fem. **ትገገ:** | **ይገቡ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ይገባ: may he go in.	ይገቡ: may they go in.
... fem.	ትገባ: may she go in.	
2d p. masc.	ትገባ: } mayest thou	ትገቡ: may you go in.
... fem.	ትገቢ: } go in.	
... hon. 1.	ይገቡ: } may you go	
... 2.	ትገቡ: } in.	
1st. com.	እገባ: may I go in.	እገገባ: may we go in.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m.	ገብተ: he entering.	ገብተው: they entering.
... f.	ገብታ: she entering.	
2d. m.	ገብተህ: fem. ገብተሽ:	ገብታችሁ:
... hon. 1.	ገብተው: 2. ገብታችሁ:	
1st com.	ገብቺ:	ገብተን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ገባ: }	do thou enter.	ገቡ: do ye enter.
Fem. ገቢ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

መገባት: to go in, the going in, the entrance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ገቢ: *intrs.* one who enters in.
 ገቢ: that which is entered into, i.e. the interior.
Rel. Pret. የገባ: he who entered.
Pres. የሚገባ: he who enters.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Transitive Voice.

እገባ: He made go in, introduced.—(Is quite regular.)

1. INDICATIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.	Preterite.	PLURAL.
እገባ: he introduced.		እገቡ: they introduced.

Present and Future.

ያገባል: he introduces. | ያገባሉ:

2. CONTINGENT.

ያገባ: fem. ታገባ: | ያገቡ:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ያገባ: may he introduce. | **ያገቡ**: may they introduce.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አገብተ: he introducing. | **አገቡተው**: they introducing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አገባ**: } do thou introduce. | **አገቡ**: do ye introduce.
 Fem. **አገቡ**: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ማገባት: the introducing, introduction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አጋቢ**: one who introduces.*Rel. Perf.* **ያገባ**: he who introduced.*Pres.* **የሚያገባ**: he who introduces.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive.***ተገባ**: *impersonal*. It was proper, It belonged.

Is treated like other Passives—has no Subjunctive.

The Constructive has **ተገብተ**: and in other respects it is like **ገባ**::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አጋባ**: He married.The **ጋ**: is long throughout; and the Preformative **አ**: is treated as in all the Transitive forms.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive of the preceding.***ተጋባ**: Was married.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስገባ**: He caused to go in; introduced.*Subjunctive*, **ያስገባ**:: | *Imperative*, **አስገባ**::*Constructive*, **አስገብተ**:: | *Infinitive*, **ማስገባት**::

All the other Forms quite regular.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Intensive Voice.

በቃ: (from **በቃ**: it sufficed) was quite sufficient.

A geminating form. The long middle letter is retained throughout, and the rest treated like **ገገ** ::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Intensive and Reiterative.

እገገ: He frequently went in, often cohabited, behaved properly.

This conjugation is like a transitive of the preceding one: the long penultima is retained throughout, and the rest treated like **እገገ** ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

እጸፋፋ: He comforted, strengthened.

The two middle letters remain long; **እ**: is treated as in all Transitive forms: there is no Subjunctive; and as to the rest, this conjugation is like the others of this class.

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

Intense Passive.

ተጸፋፋ: Was comforted.

Is treated like other Passives, retains the long penultima, and has the other peculiarities of this class.

(bb.) Forms with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle.

- In these forms, the original guttural having been in the middle, on its absorption, the first radical has become long. It retains, however, its length only in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, and the Infinitive Moods of the Active; and through the whole of the Passive forms, except the Constructive. It has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive; but uses, as is generally done in such cases, the Contingent for the purpose. It has, besides, the paragogic **ጥ**: extremely seldom; because it appears that letter is intended for compensation for final absorbed letters, of which there are none in this class.

This class has seven different Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ማለ: (Eth. መሐለ:) He swore, took an oath.

1. INDICATIVE PRETERITE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. m.	ማለ: he swore.		ማሉ: they swore.
... f.	ማለች: she swore.		
2d . . m.	ማልህ: fem. ማልሽ:		ማላችሁ:
.. hon. 1.	ማሉ: 2. ማላችሁ:		
1st com.	ማልሁ:		ማልኑ:

Present and Future.

3d p. m.	ይምላል: he swears.	|	ይምላሉ: they swear.
----------	-------------------------	--	--------------------------

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m.	ይምል: fem. ትምል: | ይምሉ::
----------	---

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m.	ምሉ: he swearing.	|	ምለው:
... f.	ምላ: she swearing.	|	
2d . . m.	ምላህ: fem. ምላሽ:	|	ምላችሁ:
.. hon 1.	ምለው: 2. ምላችሁ:	|	
1st com.	ምደ:	|	ምለን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ማል: }	do thou swear.	|	ማሉ: do ye swear.
Fem. ማደ: }		|	

6. INFINITIVE.

መማል: to swear, the swearing.

7. PARTICIPLES.

<i>Simple,</i>	ማደ: one who swears.
<i>Rel. Pret.</i>	ምላል: he who swore.
<i>Pres.</i>	ምላምል: he who swears.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አማለ:** He made swear.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያምል::	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	አምል:
<i>Constructive,</i>	አምሉ::	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማማል::

(See the above remarks.)

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተማለ**: He was sworn.

Contingent, ደማለ።	|	Imperative, ተማለ፡
Constructive, ተምሉ።	|	Infinitive, መማለ።

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive (Causative) Voice.***አስማለ**: He made swear.

Contingent, ደስምለ።	|	Imperative, አስማለ፡
Constructive, አስምሉ።	|	Infinitive, ማስማለ።

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Frequentative (Intensive) Voice.***አጣጣለ**: Distributed by casting (lots). Radix, **ጣለ**: He cast.

Contingent, ደጣጥለ።	|	Imperative, አጣጣለ፡
Constructive, አጣጥሉ።	|	Infinitive, ማጣጣለ።

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocal Voice.***ተማማለ**: Mutually swore, conspired.

Contingent, ደማማለ።	|	Imperative, ተማማለ፡
Constructive, ተማምሉ።	|	Infinitive, መማማለ።

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተማለለ።** He adjured, earnestly entreated.

Contingent, ደማለለ።	|	Imperative, ተማለለ፡
Constructive, ተማሉ።	|	Infinitive, መማለለ።

(c.c.) *Forms with an Absorbed P: in the Middle.*

These forms are determined by the rule laid down, Part I. Ch. VII. 4. E. On the absorption of the **P**: its corresponding vowel *é* has been joined to the first radical; which, whenever it is shortened, changes *é* into a short *i*; but when lengthened (as in the Fourth Conjugation), the first radical is put into the Fourth Order, and **P**: is restored. No paragogic **ጥ**: is in this class.

We take the two Verbs, **ቬጠ**: He sold, and **ሒደ**: He went.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ሸጠ: *Active*, He sold. *Ethiopic*, **ሠጀጠ:**

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ሸጠ: he sold.	ሸጡ: they sold.
... fem. ሸጠች: she sold.	
2d .. masc. ሸጥህ: fem. ሸጥሽ:	ሸጣችሁ:
... hon. 1. ሸጡ: 2. ሸጣችሁ:	
1st.. com. ሸጥሁ:	ሸጥን:

*Present and Future.*3d p. masc. **ጀሸጣል:** he sells. | **ጀሸጣሉ:** they sell.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ጀሸጥ: fem. ትሸጥ:	ጀሸጡ:
2d .. ትሸጥ: fem. ትሸጭ:	ትሸጡ:
... hon. 1. ጀሸጡ: 2. ትሸጡ:	
1st.. com. እሸጥ:	እንሸጥ:

3d pers. masc.

ጀሸጥ: may he sell.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

| **ጀሸጡ:** may they sell.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ሸጦ: he selling.	ሸጠው:
... fem. ሸጣ: she selling.	
2d .. masc. ሸጠህ: fem. ሸጠሽ:	ሸጣችሁ:
... hon. 1. ሸጠው:	
... .. 2. ሸጣችሁ:	
1st.. com. ሸጧሁ:	ሸጧን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ሸጥ: }	} do thou sell.	| ሸጡ: do ye sell.
Fem. ሸጭ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

መሸጥ: to sell, the selling, sale.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple (a.) Act. **ሸጧ፡** one who sells, a seller.(b.) **ሸጧ፡** a thing sold, merchandize.*Rel. Preterite,* **የሸጠ:** he who sold.*Present,* **የሚሸጥ:** he who sells.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***አሐደ:** He made go, drove the threshing ox.

Contingent, ያሐድ:	Imperative, አሐድ:
Subjunctive, ያሐድ:	Infinitive, ማሐድ::
Constructive, አሐደ::	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተሸጠ:** He was sold.

Contingent, ይሸጥ:	Imperative, ተሸጥ:
No Subjunctive.	Infinitive, መሸጥ::
Constructive, ተሸጦ:	

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተሻየጠ:** He traded, dealt, carried on commerce.

Contingent, ይሻየጥ:	Imperative, ተሻየጥ:
Constructive, ተሻየጦ:	Infinitive, መሻየጥ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative (Transitive) Voice.***አስሐደ:** He made to go.

Contingent, ያስሐድ::	Imperative, አስሐድ::
Subjunctive, ያስሐድ::	Infinitive, ማስሐድ::
Constructive, አስሐደ::	

(dd.) *Forms with an Absorbed ፬: in the Middle.*

According to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 5, and 6. the middle letter ፬: has been absorbed; its vowel *o* attached to the first radical. This is further shortened, in the Subjunctive Constructive and Active Imperative, into *ū*. But in those forms which have long letters, ፬: is restored. In some of these, it forms diphthongs of the fourth order. Those forms of this class, whose first radical is a diphthong, as **ቀ-የ: ቀ-ላ: ቀ-ጣ: ከ-ረ: ገ-ደ:**, have the Causative form with **አስ:** and the paragodic **ተ:**; which the forms with simple *o* have not.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***ቆመ** : He stood.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ቆመ : he stood.		ቆሙ : they stood.
.. .. fem. ቆመች : she stood.		
2d .. masc. ቆምህ : fem. ቆምሽ :	ቆማችሁ :	
.. .. hon. 1. ቆሙ : 2. ቆማችሁ :		
1st.. com. ቆምሁ ::	ቆማሁ ::	

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ሂቆም : fem. ትቆም :	ሂቆሙ :
2d .. masc. ትቆም : fem. ትቆሙ :	ትቆሙ :
.. .. hon. 1. ሂቆሙ : 2. ትቆሙ :	
1st.. com. አቆም ::	አንቆም ::

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ሂቆም : may he stand.	ሂቆሙ :: may they stand.
.. .. fem. ትቆም : may she stand.	

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ቁሞ : he standing.	ቁመው : they standing.
.. .. fem. ቁማ : she standing.	
2d .. masc. ቁመህ : fem. ቁመሽ :	ቁማችሁ :
.. .. hon. 1. ቁመው : 2. ቁማችሁ :	
1st.. com. ቁሙ :	ቁሙን ::

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ቁም : } stand !	ቁሙ : do ye stand.
Fem. ቁሙ :	

6. INFINITIVE.

መቆም : to stand, the standing, station, state.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ቀዋሚ** : one who stands (see Dictionary). **ቁም** : Eth. standing, straightforward.*Rel. Pret.* **የቆመ** : he who stood.*Pres.* **የሚቆም** : he who stands.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አቆመ**: He made to stand, erected.

Contingent, ያቆም :	Imperative, አቆም :
Subjunctive, ያቁም :	Infinitive, ማቆም ::
Constructive, አቁሞ :	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተቆመ**: He was erected.—No Subjunctive.

Contingent, ይቆም : (ይቆወም :)	Imperative, ተቆም : (ተቆወም :)
Constructive, ተቁሞ ::	Infinitive, መቆም :: (መቆወም :)

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ተቃወመ**: He withstood, resisted.

Contingent, ይቃወም :	Imperative, ተቃወም :
Constructive, ተቃውሞ :	Infinitive, መቃወም ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስቀ-የ**: He caused to wait.

Contingent, ያስቀ-ይ :	Imperative, አስቀ-ይ :
Subjunctive, ያስቀ-ይ :	Infinitive, ማስቀ-የት ::
Constructive, አስቀ-ይቶ :	

F. G. SIXTH AND SEVENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Intensive Forms.***ተቋቋ-መ**: and **ተቋቋመ**:: To resist to the end.

Contingent, ይቋቋ-ም : and ይቋቋም :	Imperative, ተቋቋ-ም : & ተቋቋም :
Constructive, ተቋቋ-ሞ :	Infinitive, መቋቋ-ም : and መቋቋም :



IV. FOURTH CLASS.—*Doubly Imperfect Biliterals.*

These are subdivided into three species :

- (aa) Verbs doubly contracted.
- (bb) Verbs beginning with **አ**: and terminating in an absorbed guttural.
- (cc) Beginning with **የ**: which absorbs a guttural.

(aa) *Doubly Contracted Biliterals.*

These are but few in number ; derived from Quadrilaterals, and flexible through three Conjugations.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION. *

Intransitive. (Active) Voice.

ለለ: He was loose, lax.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ለለ : he was lax.	ለለ : they were lax.
.... fem. ለለች : she was lax.	
.... masc. ለለህ : fem. ለለሽ :	ለለችሁ :
.... hon. 1. ለለ : 2. ለለችሁ :	
1st.. com. ለለሁ :	ለለኑ :

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. ይለለ : he is lax.	ይለለ : they are lax.
... fem. ትለለች : she is lax.	
2d.. masc. ትለለህ :	ትለለችሁ :
... fem. ትለለሽ :	
.... hon. 1. ይለለ :	
.... .. 2. ትለለችሁ :	
1st.. com. ኧለለሁ :	ኧንለለኑ :

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ይለለ : fem. ትለለ :	ይለለ :
2d.. .. ትለለ : .. ትለይ :	
... hon. 1. ይለለ : 2. ትለለ :	ትለለ :
1st.. com. ኧለለ :	ኧንለለ :

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ለልተ፡ he being lax.	ለልተው፡
... fem.	ለልተ፡ she being lax.	
2d .. masc.	ለልተህ፡	ለልተኝሁ፡
... fem.	ለልተሽ፡	
... hon. 1.	ለልተው፡	
... .. 2.	ለልተኝሁ፡	
1st.. com.	ለልቺ፡	ለልተን፡

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ለለ፡	fem. ለይ፡ be lax.	| ለሉ፡ do ye be lax.
-----------	------------------	-------------------

6. INFINITIVE.

መለለት፡ to be loose, lax.

7. PARTICIPLES.

<i>Simple,</i>	None.
<i>Rel. Pret.</i>	የለለ፡ he who was lax.
<i>Pres.</i>	የሚለለ፡ he who is lax.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

አለለ፡ To loosen, relax.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያለለ፡	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	አለለ፡
<i>Constructive,</i>	አለልተ፡	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መለለት፡፡

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive Reflective Voice.

ተራራ፡ Was pitied.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደራራ፡	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተራራ፡
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተራርተ፡	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መራራት፡

(bb) *Bilaterals beginning with አ፡ and terminating in an Absorbed Guttural.*

They are but few, and have only Three Conjugations. They have the Paragogic ት፡

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***አጣ:** He wanted, had not.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
3d p. m.	አጣ: he wanted.	አጡ:	they wanted.
... f.	አጣች: she wanted.		
2d .. m.	አጣህ: fem. አጣሽ:	አጣችሁ:	
.. hon. l.	አጡ: 2. አጣችሁ:		
1st com.	አጣሁ:	አጣኑ::	

3d pers. masc.

*Present, and Future.***ያጣል:** he wants. fem. **ታጣለች:** | **ያጣሉ:** they want.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያጣ: fem. **ታጣ:** | **ያጡ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያጣ: fem. **ትጣ:** | **ያጡ::**

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አጥቶ: he wanting. fem. **አጥታ:** | **አጥቲው:** they wanting.

5. IMPERATIVE.

አጣ: fem. **አጭ:** do thou want. | **አጡ:** do ye want.

6. INFINITIVE.

መጣት: To want, the wanting, want.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.*Rel. Pret.* **ያጣ:** he who wanted.*Pres.* **የመጣያጣ:** he who wants.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Intransitive Voice.***ታጣ:** To be wanted.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያታጣ::	|	<i>Imperative,</i> ታጣ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ታጥቶ::	|	<i>Infinitive,</i> መታጣት::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive, Causative Voice.***አሳጣ** : To deprive.Contingent, **ያሳጣ** :Imperative, **አስጣ** :Subjunctive, **ያስጣ** :Infinitive, **ማሳጣት** :Constructive, **አሳጥተ** :(cc) *Verb beginning with P: which absorbs a Guttural.*

Only one Verb has been discovered to belong to this class.

ያዘ : Eth. **አዝ** : To seize.The **ያ** : is shortened into **ይ** : and even reduced to the mere vowel *i*.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ያዘ** : He seized.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ያዘ** : he seized.... f. **ያዘች** : she seized.2d .. m. **ያዘህ** : fem. **ያዘሽ** :.. hon. 1. **ያዘ** : 2. **ያዘህ** :1st com. **ያዘሁ** :

PLURAL.

ያዘ : they seized.**ያዘሁ** :**ያዘሁ** ::*Present and Future.*3d p. m. { **ያዘል** : & **ይዘል** : } he seizes.**ያዘሉ** : and **ይዘሉ** : they seize.... f. { **ጥዘልች** : & **ትዘልች** : } she seizes.2d .. m. **ጥዘህ** : & **ትዘህ** :**ጥዘሁ** : and **ትዘሁ** :... f. **ጥዘሽ** : & **ትዘሽ** :.. hon. 1. **ያዘሉ** : and **ይዘሉ** :... 2. { **ጥዘሁ** : & **ትዘሁ** : }1st com. **አዘሁ** : & **እዘሁ** :**እዘሉ** : and **እንዘሉ** :

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. **ይዝ** :**ይዝ** :... f. **ጥዝ** : and **ትዝ** :**ጥዝ** : and **ትዝ** :2d .. m. **ጥዝ** : and **ትዝ** :... f. **ጥዝ** : and **ትዝ** :.. hon. 1. **ይዝ** : 2. **ጥዝ** : & **ትዝ** :1st com. **አዝ** : and **እዝ** ::**እዝ** : and **እንዝ** ::

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. m.	ያዝ : may he seize.	ያዙ : may they seize.
... f.	ትያዝ : may she seize.	
2d .. m.	ትያዝ : fem. ትያዝ :	ትያዙ :
.. hon. 1.	ያዙ : 2. ትያዙ :	
1st com.	እያዝ :	እንያዝ ::

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m.	ያዝ : he seizing.	ያዘው : they seizing.
... f.	ያዝ : she seizing.	
2d .. m.	ያዘህ : fem. ያዘሽ :	ያዘኑህ :
.. hon. 1.	ያዘው : 2. ያዘኑህ :	
1st com.	ያዝ :	ያዝን ::

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ያዝ :	} do thou seize.	ያዙ : do ye seize.
Fem. ያዝ :		

6. INFINITIVE.

መያዝ: to seize, the seizing, seizure.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ያዝ**: a seizer.

Rel. Pret. **የያዘ**: he who seized.

Present.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc.	የሚያዝ : and የሚያዝ : he who seizes.	
... fem.	የምትያዝ : and የምትያዝ : she who seizes.	
2d .. masc.	የምትያዝ : and የምትያዝ :	} thou who seizest.
... fem.	የምትያዝ : and የምትያዝ :	
... hon. 1.	የሚያዝ : and የሚያዝ :	} you who seize.
... .. 2.	የምትያዝ : and የምትያዝ :	
... com.	የምያዝ : I who seize.	

PLURAL.

የሚያዝ: and **የሚያዝ**: they who seize.

የምትያዝ: and **የምትያዝ**: you who seize.

የምንያዝ: and **የምንያዝ**: we who seize.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.***ՀԲԻ**: He caused to seize.

Contingent, ԲԲԻ :	Imperative, ՀԲԻ :
Subjunctive, ԲԲԻ :	Infinitive, ԾԲԻ ::
Constructive, ՀԲԻ :	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ԷԲԻ**: He was seized.

Contingent, ԲԲԻ :	Imperative, ԷԲԻ :
Constructive, ԷԲԻ :	Infinitive, ԾԷԻ ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***ՀՈՒԲԻ**: He caused to be seized, betrayed.

Contingent, ԲՈՒԲԻ : and ԲՈՒԲԻ ::	Imperative, ՀՈՒԲԻ :
Subjunctive, ԲՈՒԲԻ :	Infinitive, ԾՈՒԲԻ ::
Constructive, ՀՈՒԲԻ : and ՀՈՒԲԻ ::	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active and Passive, Frequentative and Reciprocal.***ԷԲԲԻ**: He frequently, alternately, reciprocally, completely, seized, or was seized.

Contingent, ԲԲԲԻ ::	Imperative, ԷԲԲԻ ::
Constructive, ԷԲԲԻ ::	Infinitive, ԾԲԲԻ ::

4. Various Conjugations of Quadriliteral and Pluriliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—*Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.*

This numerous class has Eleven Conjugations. (See pp. 56—60.)

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Active Voice.***ԱՍՏԱՍ**: It was green. **ՓՈՓՈ**: He beat.

Contingent, ԶԱՍՏԱՍ :	Imperative, ԱՍՏԱՍ :
Subjunctive, ԶԱՍՏԱՍ :	Infinitive, ՍԱՍՏԱՍ ::
Constructive, ԱՍՏԱՍ :	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive Voice.***አለምልም:** He made green, verdant, refreshed.*Contingent, ያለመልም:**Imperative, አለምልም:**Subjunctive, ያለምልም:**Infinitive, መለምልም::**Constructive, አለምልሞ:*

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተለቀለቀ:** He was bedaubed.*Contingent, ይለቀለቅ:**Imperative, ተለቀለቅ:**Constructive, ተለቅልቆ:**Infinitive, መለቀለቅ::*

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Active Voice.***አነቃነቀ:** He shook.*Contingent, ያነቃንቅ:**Imperative, አንቃንቅ:**Subjunctive, ያንቃንቅ:**Infinitive, መንቃነቅ::**Constructive, አንቃንቆ:*

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ተለቃለቀ:** He bedaubed, washed himself.*Contingent, ይለቃለቅ:**Imperative, ተለቃለቅ:**Constructive, ተልቃልቆ:**Infinitive, መለቃለቅ::*

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***አስለቀለቀ:** He caused bedaubing. (**አሸከረከረ:** He moved, crept.)*Contingent, ያስለቀልቅ:**Imperative, አስለቅልቅ:**Subjunctive, ያስልቅልቅ:**Infinitive, መስለቅለቅ::**Constructive, አስለቅልቆ:*

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አንበደበደ:** He beat, shook.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያንበደብድ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	አንበድብድ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ያንበድብድ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማንበድበድ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	አንበድብድ:		

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive Voice.***ተንቀጠቀጠ:** He trembled.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደንቀጠቀጥ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተንቀጠቀጥ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተንቀጥቅጦ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መንቀጠቀጥ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Active Voice.***አንቀሳቀሰ:** He stirred up, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያንቀሳቅስ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	አንቅሳቅስ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	አንቀሳቅሶ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማንቀሳቀስ::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ተንቀሳቀሰ:** He was stirred, He moved.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደንቀሳቀስ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተንቀሳቀስ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተንቀሳቅሶ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መንቀሳቀስ::

L. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***አሳንቀሳቀሰ:** He stirred, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያሳንቀሳቅስ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	አሰንቅሳቅስ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ያሰንቅሳቅስ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማሳንቀሳቀስ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	አሳንቅሳቅሶ:		

II. SECOND CLASS.—*Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical Reduplicated and Transposed.*

This class is not numerous, and it has Six Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive Voice.

ደሉደሞ: He was blunt.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ደሉደሞ: he was blunt.	ደሉደሙ: they were blunt.
... fem. ደሉደሙት:	
2d .. masc. ደሉደሞህ:	ደሉደማችሁ:
... fem. ደሉደሙሽ:	
... hon. 1. ደሉደሙ:	
... hon. 2. ደሉደማችሁ:	
1st.. com. ደሉደሞሁ:	ደሉደሙኑ:

Present and Future.

ደደሉደማል: he is blunt.

| ደደሉደማሉ: they are blunt.

2. CONTINGENT.

ደደሉደሞ: fem. **ትደሉደሞ:** **| ደደሉደሙ:**

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ደሉደሞት: he being blunt.

| ደሉደሞተው:

5. NO IMPERATIVE.

6. INFINITIVE.

መደሉደሞት: to be blunt, the being blunt, bluntness.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Rel. Pret. **ደደሉደሞ:** he who was blunt.

Pres. **ደደሉደሞ:** he who is blunt.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive, and Intransitive Voice.

አደሉደሞ: He blunted.

አጉረመረመ: He murmured.

Contingent, **ያጉረመርሞ:**

Imperative, **አጉረምረም:**

Subjunctive, **ያጉረምረም:**

Infinitive, **ማጉረምረም:**

Constructive, **አጉረምረሞ:**

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተጸሉደሞ**: Was blunted.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደጸሉደም:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተጸሉደም :
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተጸሉደምተ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መጸሉደመተ ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አከፍወኑ**: He gave success.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያከፍውን:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	አከፍወን :
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ያከፍወን:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማከፍወን ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	አከፍውኑ:	|		

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተከፍወኑ**: He had success, succeeded, prospered.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያከፍወን:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተከፍወን :
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተከፍውኑ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መከፍወን ::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***ተንገረገበ**: It became knotty.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ደንገረገበ:	|	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተንገረገበ :
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተንገረገቡ:	|	<i>Infinitive,</i>	መንገረገብ ::

III. THIRD CLASS.

Geminants, probably derived from Triliterals, but having their original verb lost, so as not to be reckoned to the geminating Conjugation of the Triliteral Regular Verb. This class is but small—is inflected through six conjugations, similar to other Geminants.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive.***ከ-በለለ**: He escaped.

Contingent, ደከ-በለ :	Imperative, ከ-በለለ :
Subjunctive, ደከ-በለለ :	Infinitive, መከ-በለለ ::
Constructive, ከ-በለ :	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተደመሰሰ**: He was destroyed.

Contingent, ደደመሰሰ :	Imperative, ተደመሰሰ :
Constructive, ተደምሰሶ :	Infinitive, መደመሰሰ ::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተጉ-ማለለ**: Walked nimbly, affectedly, proudly.

Contingent, ደጉ-ማለለ :	Imperative, ተጉ-ማለለ :
Constructive, ተጉ-ማለ :	Infinitive, መጉ-ማለለ ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***አስጠነቀቀ**: He cautioned.

Contingent, ያስጠነቀቀ :	Imperative, አስጠነቀቀ :
Subjunctive, ያስጠነቅቅ :	Infinitive, ማስጠነቅቅ ::
Constructive, አስጠነቅቀ :	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***አንከገለለ**: He rolled about.

Contingent, ያንከገለ :	Imperative, አንከገለለ :
Constructive, አንከገለ :	Infinitive, ማንከገለለ :

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተንከገለለ**: He was rolled about.

Contingent, ደንከገለለ :	Imperative, ተንከገለለ :
Constructive, ተንከገለ :	Infinitive, መንከገለለ ::

IV. FOURTH CLASS.

Quadriliterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***መሰገነ**: Was glorious.

Contingent, ደመሰገን :	Imperative, መሰገን :
Subjunctive, ደመሰገን :	Infinitive, መመሰገን ::
Constructive, መሰገኖ :	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***አመሰገነ**: He glorified.

Contingent, ዖመሰገን :	Imperative, አመሰገን :
Subjunctive, ዖመሰገን :	Infinitive, ማመሰገን ::
Constructive, አመሰገኖ :	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተመሰገነ**: He was glorified.

Contingent, ደመሰገን :	Imperative, ተመሰገን :
Constructive, ተመሰገኖ :	Infinitive, መመሰገን ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አሰፍቦት**: He dismissed.

Contingent, ዖሰፍቦት :	Imperative, አሰፍቦት :
Constructive, አሰፍቦቱ :	Infinitive, ማሰፍቦት ::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Passive Voice.***ተሰፍቦት**: He was dismissed.

Contingent, ደሰፍቦት :	Imperative, ተሰፍቦት :
Constructive, ተሰፍቦቱ :	Infinitive, መሰፍቦት :

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስመሰገነ:** He causes to be glorious or glorified.*Contingent,* **ያስመሰገን:***Imperative,* **አስመሰገን:***Subjunctive,* **ያስመሰገን:***Infinitive,* **ማስመሰገን:***Constructive,* **አስመሰገኖ:**

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ገልገበ:** He overthrew completely.*Contingent,* **ይገልገብ:***Imperative,* **ገልገብ:***Subjunctive,* **ይገልገብ:***Infinitive,* **መገልገብ:***Constructive,* **ገልገብ:**

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely Passive Voice.***ተገልገበ:** He was completely overthrown.*Contingent,* **ይገልገብ:***Imperative,* **ተገልገብ:***Constructive,* **ተገልገብ:***Infinitive,* **መገልገብ:**

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocatative and Reiterative Voice.***ተሰፍገበ:** Took leave from each other.*Contingent,* **ይሰፍገብ:***Imperative,* **ተሰፍገብ:***Constructive,* **ተሰፍገብ:***Infinitive,* **መሰፍገብ:**5. *Defective and Anomalous Verbs.*

Three of them—viz. I. The Auxiliary **አለ:** "He is"; II. **ነበረ:** "He was"; III. **ነወ:** "He is,"—have been conjugated before we entered upon the Regular Triliteral Verb. (See pp. 64, 65.) We proceed to give here the rest.

IV. *Various Conjugations of the Verb አለ:* "He said."

The irregularities in this verb are caused by the mixing together of the two forms **አለ:** and **ባለ:** Eth. **ብሏ:** "To say." This verb has Ten Conjugations.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አለ: he said.	አሉ: they said.
... fem.	አለች: she said.	
2d .. masc.	አልህ: fem. አልሽ:	አላችሁ:
... hon. 1.	አሉ: 2. አላችሁ:	
1st. com.	አልሁ:	አልኑ:

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ይላል: he says.	ይላሉ: they say.
... fem.	ትላለች: she says.	
2d .. masc.	ትላለህ: f. ትያልሽ:	ትላላችሁ:
... hon. 1.	ይላሉ: 2. ትላላችሁ:	
1st. com.	እላለሁ:	እንላለን:

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይል: and ይበል:	ይሉ: and ይበሉ:
... fem.	ትል: and ትበል:	
2d .. masc.	ትል: and ትበል:	ትሉ: and ትበሉ:
... fem.	ትይ: and ትበይ:	
... hon. 1.	ይሉ: and ይበሉ:	
... .. 2.	ትሉ: and ትበሉ:	
1st. com.	እል: and እበል:	እንል: and እንበል:

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ብሉ: he saying.	ብለው:
... fem.	ብላ: she saying.	
2d .. masc.	ብለህ: fem. ብለሽ:	ብላችሁ:
... hon. 1.	ብለው: 2. ብላችሁ:	
1st. com.	ብዩ:	ብለን:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	በል: }	do thou say.	በሉ: do ye say.
Fem.	በይ: }		

6. INFINITIVE.

ማለት: To say, the saying, meaning, intention.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ባይ: one who says.

Rel. Pret. ያለ: he who said.

Pres. የሚል: he who says.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

አበለ: To deceive by talking.

Contingent, ያብል: | *Imperative*, አብል:

Constructive, አብሉ: | *Infinitive*, ማበል::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ተባለ: *pass.* To be said, called, named.

1. PRETERITE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
3d p. m.	ተባለ: he was called.	ተባሉ: they were called.
... f.	ተባለች: she was called.	
2d .. m.	ተባልህ: f. ተባልሽ:	ተባላችሁ:
.. hon. 1.	ተባሉ: 2. ተባላችሁ:	
1st com.	ተባልሁ:	ተባልኩ::

Present and Future.

3d p. m. ይባላል: he is called. | ይባላሉ: they are called.

... f. ትባላለች: she is called.

Contingent, ይባል: | *Imperative*, none.

Constructive, ትብሉ: | *Infinitive*, መባል::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ታበለ: *pass.* from አበለ: To be deceived.

Contingent, ይታበል: | *Imperative*, ታበል:

Constructive, ታብሉ: | *Infinitive*, መታበል::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

ተባለ: To rumour in public.

Whether any more than the Preterite Indicative is extant of this form, we do not know.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

አገበል: He persuaded.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያገብል :	<i>Imperative,</i>	አገብል :
<i>Constructive,</i>	አገብሉ :	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማገበል ::

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተገበል: To be persuaded, to say to each other.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ይገበል :	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተገበል :
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተገብሉ :	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማገበል ::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

ተገባል: *recipr.* To say to each other.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ይገባል :	<i>Imperative,</i>	ተገባል :
<i>Constructive,</i>	ተገብሉ :	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማገባል :

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

ታለል: He was talked into any thing, was persuaded, duped.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ይታለል :	<i>Imperative,</i>	ታለል :
<i>Constructive,</i>	ታሉ :	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማታለል ::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

አታለል: He persuaded, cheated.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ያታል :	<i>Imperative,</i>	አታለል :
<i>Constructive,</i>	አታሉ :	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ማታለል ::

V. First Conjugation of the Verb **አከል**: "To be equal," "amount to."

The remainder of this verb, **ተካከል**: and **አስተካከል**: is regular. The anomaly of the First Conjugation consists in its assuming more of the form **አከል**: or **አሀል**: than of **አከል**., and in its not having all the Moods and Tenses. We give here all that is, as far as we know, extant.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite, none.*Present and Future*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ያሀል : he is equal,	ያሀሉ :
The other Persons are wanting.		

2. CONTINGENT.

3d Person Masculine, **የህል**: Feminine, **ትህል**:

These two personal forms only are used with the signification, "Amounting to," "equal to;" *e.g.* **የሚሰጠውን የህል**: "equal to what he gives."

SUBJUNCTIVE, CONSTRUCTIVE, and IMPERATIVE—NONE.

INFINITIVE, **ማከል**: *i.g.* **መካከል**: and **መካከል**: "the middle."

PARTICIPLES—Eth. **ኧኩል**: "equal," "half."

Rel. Pres. **የሚየህል**: "what is equal to," "amounts to, about, almost"; *e.g.*

ሶስት ሺህ የሚየህል "amounting to (about) three thousand."

VI. Negative Verb **ለል**: "Is not."

All that exists of this verb is this: **ለል**: "it (he) is not." fem. **ለለች**:: Participle, **የለለ**: fem. **የለለች**: "that which is not," "has not," "is without;" "without," "besides," "exclusively," "not including."

VII. Of the verb **ለቀ**: (Eth. **ልህቀ**;) "To be greater," "larger," "excel;" in the First Conjugation, nothing is extant but the 3d pers. masc. Conting. **ይልቅ**: which is used as a sort of Comparative, "more," "greater," "especially"; and Participle, **የሚልቅ**: **የምትልቅ**: "he, she, or it, who (which) is greater," "superior," "excels."

The Transitive form of this verb **አለቀ**: "he raised," "made excellent," is quite regular.

VIII. Verb **መጣ**: "He came," is, in its First Conjugation, destitute of an Imperative; whilst all the rest is regular and perfect. The Imperative is supplied by the form **ፍ**: Eth. and Tigr. **ንጂ**:: Sing. masc. **ፍ**: fem. **ኒ**: and **ንጂ**: "do thou come." Pl. **ኑ**: "do ye come." Only in very rare instances they use a regular form **ምጣ**: **ምጩ**: **ምጡ**::; but it is against the custom.

IX. **ተወ**: "He left," "omitted," "abandoned," "left off."

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ተወ :	fem. ተወች :	ተወ :
2d .. masc.	ተወህ :	fem. ተወሽ :	
... hon. 1.	ተወ :	2. ተዋችሁ :	ተዋችሁ :
1st.. com.	ተወሁ :		ተወኑ :

SINGULAR. *Present and Future.* PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ይተዋል : he abandons.	ይተዋሉ : they abandon.
.. .. fem.	ትተዋለች :	
2d .. masc.	ትተዋለህ :	
.. .. fem.	ትተዋለሽ :	

(The rest is regular.)

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይተወ :	fem. ትተወ :	ይተወ :
.. .. masc.	ትተወ :	fem. ትተይ :	

(The rest is regular.)

3. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ትቶ :	fem. ትታ :	ትተወ :
2d .. masc.	ትተህ :	fem. ትተሽ :	ትታችሁ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ትተወ :	2. ትታችሁ :	
1st .. com.	ትቺ :		ትተን :

4. IMPERATIVE.

masc. ተወ :	fem. ተይ :	ተወ ::
-------------------	------------------	--------------

6. INFINITIVE. **መተወት**::7. PARTICIPLES. **የተወ**:: **የሚተወ**::

The Transitive Conjugation of this verb, **አስተወ**: "he caused to abandon," is analogous to the preceding; the **ወ**: being changed in the 2d Fem. Sing. of the Ind. Pres., Conting., and Imper. into **የ**:, and rejected in the Constr.

X. Verb **ካ**: and **አካ**: "to desire," "want," "seek."

1. INDICATIVE.

*Preterite. Regular.**Present and Future.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ይካል : he wants.	ይካሉ : they want.
.. .. fem.	ትካለች : she wants.	
2d .. masc.	ትካለህ : f. ትካለሽ :	ትካላችሁ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ይካሉ : 2. ትካላችሁ :	
1st .. com.	ካላሁ :	ካንካለን ::

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ይካ :	fem. ትካ :	ይኩ :
2d .. masc.	ትካ :	fem. ትኪ :	ትኩ :
.. .. hon. 1.	ይኩ : 2. ትኩ :		
1st .. com.	ካካ :		ካንካ ::

SINGULAR.		3. CONSTRUCTIVE.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	ሸተ : he wanting.		ሸተው : they wanting.
... fem.	ሸተ : she wanting.		
2d .. masc.	ሸተህ : fem. ሸተሽ :		ሸተኙሁ :
... hon. 1.	ሸተው : 2. ሸተኙሁ :		
1st .. com.	ሸቺ :		ሸተን ::

4. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አሻ :	} do thou seek.	አሹ : do ye seek.
Fem. አሽ :		

5. INFINITIVE.

መሻት : to want, &c. the want, desire, request.

6. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, none.

Perfect, **የሻ** : he who wanted.

Present, **የሚሻ** : he who wants.

The Transitive form of this verb, **አሻ** : is only used impersonally, in the 3d person singular masc. and fem., with the signification, "to be requisite," or, in the mind of an Abyssinian, "to produce a feeling of want by absence"; e.g. **አያሻኝም** : "I do not want (it)." The forms used are these:

<i>Preterite</i> , አሻ :	<i>Contingent</i> , ያሻ :
<i>Present</i> , ያሻል :	<i>Infinitive</i> , መሻት ::

XI. Of the verb **የለም** : which is negative to the verb **አለ** : "He is," nothing is extant but the 3d person singular masc. **የለም** : "he (it) is not," fem. **የለችም** : "she (it) is not," and plural **የለሙም** : "they are not." With Suffixes, it signifies "has (have) not," e.g. **የለውም** : "he has not." **የለችም** : "she has not." **የለንም** : "we have not," &c.

XII. The negative **አይደለም** : "Is not," is the negative answering the substantive verb **አለ** : "He is." Whence it is derived, we know not. It is used only in the Preterite of the Indicative and Participle, which we give here.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.		<i>Preterite.</i>	PLURAL.
3d p. masc.	አይደለም : he is not.		አይደሉም : they are not.
... fem.	አይደለችም :		
2d .. masc.	አይደለህም :		አይደሉኩም :
... fem.	አይደለሽም :		
... hon. 1.	አይደሉም :		
... .. 2.	አይደሉኩም :		
1st .. com.	አይደሉም :		አይደሉም ::

Relative Participle Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. የደደለ : he who is not.	የደደሉ : they who are not.
... fem. የደደለች :	
2d .. masc. የደደሉ :	የደደሉት :
... fem. የደደለች :	
... hon. 1. የደደሉ :	
... .. 2. የደደሉት :	
1st.. com. የደደሉ :	የደደሉት :

አደደለም: also is used for the Adverb of Negation, "No."

SECTION V.

On the Connexion of Pronouns with Verbs.

1. In other languages, this subject would be referred to the Syntax; but in the Semitic family, the Pronouns governed by Verbs are so closely joined to them, that it would be improper to do so, as the form of the verb is modified in no slight degree by this combination. We conceive it to be here the best place for exhibiting the mode in which it is performed, after having explained all the other processes to which the Amharic Verbs are subjected.

2. Before we entered on the consideration of the Verb, in the preceding Chapter, Sect. VIII. we mentioned those Pronouns which are joined to Verbs. We now give a brief statement of the regulations under which they are joined.

(a) All the forms of Verbs assume the Verbal Suffixes, except the two nominal forms, the Infinitive and the Simple Participle, which assume Nominal Suffixes; e.g. **እርሱን መጠበቁ**: "my keeping him." **ኃሽ**: **ጦርን ተሽካሚው**: "his armour-bearer."

(b) All the forms which assume the Verbal Suffixes do receive them at the end, except the two forms which are inflected with the Auxiliary **አለ**: i.e. the Present and Future Indicative, and the Aorist of the Constructive Mood; which place the Pronoun between the radical letters and the Auxiliary, so as to render it rather an Infix than a Suffix.

(c) With regard to the different degrees of power the Suffixes possess, of changing the letter to which they are joined, they are divided into light (*levia*) and heavy (*gravia*) Suffixes. The light Suffixes are those which are not preceded by a long *ā*: those which are preceded by a long *ā* are heavy Suffixes.

(d) The *light Suffixes* attach themselves to *ultima radicales* of the first order, without change; and to ult. rad. of the sixth order, by converting the latter into the first order, sometimes without change. The heavy suffixes convert ult. rad., in either of those two orders, into the fourth order.

(e) *Ultima radicalis* of the second and of the seventh order, in accordance with Part I. Ch. VII. 5 & 6.

α. changes **፬**: into **፩**::

β. is changed, if it is a guttural or palatine, into a diphthong of the fourth order: if not, the vowel is detached from the consonant; the latter being put into the sixth, and the former becoming **፱**: of the fourth order, before all the heavy suffixes. Before suffix 2d pers. hon. 1., it is either left unchanged, or changed into the sixth order, leaving the suffix as it is.

(f) Ult. rad. of the third and of the fifth order changes none of the light suffixes; but agreeably to Part I. Ch. VII. 4. D., when being attached to the heavy suffixes, it is generally changed into the sixth order; and **፱**: is added, to assume the long ā of the suffix.

(g) Ult. rad. of the fourth order neither suffers nor produces any change.

(h) With regard to the *insertion* or *infexion* of Pronouns, only this needs to be observed; that **አ**: of the Auxiliary **አል**: being absorbed by the Pronoun, the latter, or, if it consists of more than one letter, its last letter, is put into the fourth order, **ሁ**: being changed into **ኢ**: or **ኪ**::

These rules are illustrated by the following Table:

TABLE OF A VERB WITH SUFFIXES.

መገባ: He has fed.

1. SIMPLE FORMS.

A. *Preterite*.

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
መገባኝ : he has fed me.		መገባችኝ : she has fed me.
መገባህ : he has fed thee (<i>m.</i>).		መገባችህ : she has fed thee (<i>m.</i>).
መገባሽ : he has fed thee (<i>f.</i>).		መገባችሽ : she has fed thee (<i>f.</i>).
መገባዎ : he has fed you (hon. 1).		መገባችዎ : she has fed you (h. 1).
መገባችሁ : he has fed you (hon. 2).		መገባችሁ : she has fed you (h. 2).
መገባው : he has fed him.		መገባችው : she has fed him.
መገባት : he has fed her.		መገባችት : she has fed her.
መገባህ ^{PL.} : he has fed us.		መገባችህ ^{PL.} : she has fed us.
መገባችሁ : he has fed you.		መገባችሁ : she has fed you.
መገባቸው : he has fed them.		መገባችቸው : she has fed them.

Masculine.	SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
መገብህኝ: thou hast fed me.	መገብህኝ: thou (f.) hast fed me.	
መገብህው: thou hast fed him.	መገብህው: thou (f.) hast fed him.	
መገብህት: thou hast fed her.	መገብህት: thou (f.) hast fed her.	
መገብህኒ: ^{PL.} thou hast fed us.	መገብህኒ: ^{PL.} thou hast fed us.	
መገብህቸው: thou hast fed them.	መገብህቸው: thou hast fed them.	

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR, HONORIFIC, like the Third and Second Plural.

FIRST PERSON COMMON.

መገብሁህ: I have fed thee (m.)
መገብሁሽ: I have fed thee (f.)
መገብሁዎ: I have fed you (hon. 1).
መገብኋችሁ: I have fed you (hon. 2).
መገብሁት: I have fed him.
መገብኋት: I have fed her.
መገብኋችሁ: ^{PL.} I have fed you.
መገብኋቸው: I have fed them.

THIRD PERSON.	PLURAL.	SECOND PERSON.
መገቡኝ: they have fed me.	መገባችሁኝ: you have fed me.	
መገቡህ: they have fed thee (m.)	መገባችሁት: you have fed him.	
መገቡሽ: they have fed thee (f.)	መገባችኋት: you have fed her.	
መገብዎ: they have fed you (h.1).	መገባችሁኒ: you have fed us.	PL.
መገብዎችሁ: they have fed you (h.2).	መገባችኋቸው: you have fed them.	
መገቡት: they have fed him.		FIRST PERSON.
መገብዎት: they have fed her.	መገብነህ: we have fed thee (m.)	
መገቡኒ: they have fed us.	መገብነሽ: we have fed thee (f.)	
መገብዎችሁ: they have fed you.	መገብነዎ: we have fed you (h.1).	
መገብዎቸው: they have fed them.	መገብነችሁ: we have fed you (h.2).	
	መገብነው: we have fed him.	
	መገብነት: we have fed her.	
	መገብነችሁ: we have fed you.	PL.
	መገብነቸው: we have fed them.	

D. *Simple Constructive.*

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.	
መገብኝ:	he feeding me.	መገባኝ:	she feeding me.
መገባህ: }	he feeding thee.	መገባህ: }	she feeding thee.
መገባሽ: }		መገባሽ: }	
መገባዎ: }	he feeding you.	መገባዎ: }	she feeding you.
መገብዎችሁ: }		መገባችሁ: }	
መገብት:	he feeding him.	መገባው:	she feeding him.
መገባዋት:	he feeding her.	መገባት:	she feeding her.
መገብን:	he feeding us ^{PL.}	መገባን:	she feeding us ^{PL.}
መገባዎችሁ:	he feeding you.	መገባችሁ:	she feeding you.
መገባዎቻቸው:	he feeding them.	መገባቸው:	she feeding them.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

መገባህን: thou feeding me. | መገባሽን: thou feeding me.

Assume the Suffixes like the same Persons in the Preterite.

Second Pers. Sing. honor. 3d and 2d Plural, the same as Preterite 3d and 2d Plural.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.	FIRST PERSON PLURAL.
መገባህ: }	መገባንህ: }
መገባሽ: }	
መገባዎ: }	መገባሁ: }
መገባዎችሁ: }	
መገባው:	መገባንው:
መገባዋት:	መገባችሁ:
መገባዎችሁ:	መገባችሁ:
መገባዎቻቸው:	መገባችሁ:

NOTE.—Constructive Forms with the paragogic **ተ**: differ in nothing concerning the affixion of the Pronoun.

E. The Relative Participle treats the Suffixes like the Preterite Indicative and the Contingent.

2. *Forms with the Auxiliary አለ:: Infexion.*

INDICATIVE.

Present and Future.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR MASCULINE.

(See Contingent.)

ይመገብኛል:	he feeds me.
ይመገብሃል:	} he feeds thee.
ይመገብሻል:	
ይመገብዋል:	} he feeds you.
ይመገባችኋል:	
ይመገብዋል:	he feeds him.
ይመገባታል:	he feeds her.
ይመገብናል:	he feeds us.
ይመገባችኋል:	he feeds you.
ይመገባቸዋል:	he feeds them.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

ይመገቡኛል:	they feed me.
ይመገቡሃል:	} they feed thee.
ይመገቡሻል:	
ይመገቡዋችኋል:	} they feed you.
ይመገቡታል:	
ይመገቡታል:	they feed him.
ይመገቡዋታል:	they feed her.
ይመገቡናል:	they feed us.
ይመገቡዋችኋል:	they feed you.
ይመገቡዋቸዋል:	they feed them.

3d p. Sing. Fem.

2d Masc.

1st.. .. & P.

in the same manner
as the 3d pers. sing.
masc. with neces-
sary termination of
አለ::

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR FEMININE.

ትመገቢኛለሽ:	thou feedest me.
ትመገቢዋለሽ:	thou feedest him.
ትመገብዋለሽ:	thou feedest her.
ትመገቢናለሽ:	thou feedest us.
ትመገብዋለሽ:	thou feedest them.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

ትመገቡኛላችሁ: &c., the same
with regard to Infixes as 3d p. pl.

Constructive Aorist.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Masculine.			Feminine.
መገብኛል:	he feeds (fed &c.) me.	መገባኛለች:	she feeds me.
መገብሃል:	} he feeds (fed &c.) thee.	መገባሃለች:	} she feeds thee.
መገብሻል:		መገባሻለች:	
መገብታል:	} he feeds (fed &c.) you	መገባዋለች:	} she feeds you.
መገብዋችኋል:		መገባችኋለች:	
መገብታል:	he feeds (fed &c.) him.	መገባዋለች:	she feeds him.
መገብዋታል:	he feeds (fed &c.) her.	መገባታለች:	she feeds her.
መገብናል:	he feeds (fed &c.) us.	መገባናለች:	she feeds us.
መገብዋችኋል:	he feeds (fed &c.) you.	መገባችኋለች:	she feeds you.
መገብዋቸዋል:	he feeds (fed &c.) them.	መገባቸዋለች:	she feeds them.

Masculine.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

Feminine.

መገብህኛል:	thou feedest me, &c.	መገብሽኛል:	thou feedest me.
መገቢሃላሁ:	I feed thee, &c.	መገብንሃል:	we feed thee.
መገባችሁኛል:	you feed me.	መገብውኛል:	they feed me.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

FIRST PERSON PLURAL.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

Note.—The connexion of Negative as well as other Particles, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, will be noticed in the next Chapter.

CHAP. V.

ON THE ADVERBS.

1. The Amharic Adverbs are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*; and the *Separable Adverbs* are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The *Simple Adverbs*, again, are either *Original* or *Derived*. We have to consider, first, the *Simple Original Adverbs*.

2. The *Simple Original Adverbs* are to be subdivided into two classes; the first of which comprehends such Adverbs as express their ideas by themselves; the second, such as are usually connected with the Verbs አለ: "to say," አደረገ: or አሰኘ: "to do," "to make," "to induce."

(a) *First Class.*

መቼ: "when?"

ሰንኩ: "how much?" "how many?"

ቀስ: "calmly," "cautiously," "quietly."

ብቻ: "but," "only," "singly." Is used also with Suffixes in the Accusative: ብቻዎን: "I alone." ብቻህን: "thou alone," &c.

ቸሉ: "quickly," "speedily."

ትላንት: and ትላንትኛ: "yesterday."

አምቶ: "last year."

ዘንድሮ: "this year."

ገና: "yet." With neg. "not yet."

አሁን: "now."

አንኳ: ሰንኳ: Shoa, and Vulgar:

አኮ: "indeed," "even."

አንኳን: "no!"

አንጀ: "but," "except," "not including."

አንጀ: "I do not know."

አወን: "yes!"

ከቶ: "thoroughly," "wholly," "fully." With negative "never," "nowhere," "not at all."

ወትሮ: "always."

ዛሬ: "to-day," "now," "at present."

(b) *Second Class.*

PARTICLE

መር: of leaping, jumping.

ምር: of bitterness.

ልግም: of carelessness, idleness, and eye-service.

ሲጢጥ: of cracking.

ሰፈፍ: of soaring.

ሸተት: of gliding.

ቀስ: of caution, silence.

INSTANCES.

መር: ያለል: "he jumps."

ምር: አለ: "it was bitter."

ልግም: ያለል: "he acts carelessly," "is an eye-servant."

ሲጢጥ: ያለል: "it cracks."

ሰፈፍ: ያለል: "it soars."

ሸተት: ያለል: "he slips."

ቀስ: ያለል: "he acts cautiously."

ብልጭ: of glimmering, glittering.

ብትን: of scattering.

ተሉ: of celerity.

ትፍ: of spitting from between
the lips.

ጥል: of neglect.

ኧልል: of shouting.

ኧምቢ: of refusing.

ኧቪ: of compliance.

ኧፍ: of blowing, fanning.

ክትት: of fulness, completion.

ከፍ: of highness, elevation.

ዘም: of silence.

ዝቅ: of lowness.

ዘለገ: of tallness, &c.

ደስ: of joy.

ደፅ: of slipperiness.

ገሥገሥ: of celerity.

ጫ: of completion.

ጭቅ: of spitting through the teeth.

ጸጥ: of silence, subsiding.

ፈቀቅ: of moving forwards.

ፈገምገ: of gliding.

ብልጭ: ይላል: "it glimmers."

ብትን: ይላል: "he scatters."

ተሉ: ይላል: "he does quickly."

ትፍ: አለ: "he spat."

ጥል: ይላዋል: "he neglects him."

ኧልል: በል: "shout!"

ኧምቢ: አለ: "he refused."

ኧቪ: ይላል: "he yields, "is willing."

ኧፍ: በል: "blow," "fan."

ክትት: ይላል: "it is full," "done."

ከፍ: አደረገ: "he raised," "elevated," "made high."

ዘም: አሰኘው:: "he silenced him."

ዝቅ: አለ: "he was low," "stooped."

ዘለገ: ይላል: "he is tall and stout."

ደስ: አሰኘው: "he rejoiced,"
"pleased him."

ደፅ: አለ: "it was slippery."

ገሥገሥ: አለ: "he went quickly."

ጫ: አለ: "it was full," "entire."

ጭቅ: አለ: "he spat thro' the teeth."

ጸጥ: አለ: "it became quiet."

ፈቀቅ: አለ: "he proceeded," "went
further."

ፈገምገ: አደረገ: "he made to
glide."

Most of these particles seem to be originally intended for mere expressions of the natural sound of certain actions. Such is decidedly the case in **ቢጢጥ: ትፍ: ጭቅ: ኧልል: ኧፍ: ዋይ:** And their connexion with **አለ:** "to say," giving the idea that *e.g.* "to crack" is "to say *sif'it*"; to spit," is "to say *teff*" or "*tsh'ek*"; "to shout" is "to say *ellel*" (as is really the custom in the East*); "to blow" is "to say *eff*"; could lead us to rank the whole of this class rather with the Interjections, but that their connection with Verbs prohibits us, though several of these Particles are Interjections as well as Adverbs.

* See, in the Amharic Dictionary, **ኧልል::**

3. *Simple Derived Adverbs* are very numerous. They are derived from Nouns (Adjective and Substantive), and Verbs, and at least one Pronoun. Those derived from Nouns are not changed in form, but in the sense. Perhaps they may be considered as Accusatives, or having the Preposition **በ**: omitted. Such Nominal Adverbs are the following:

ORIGINAL SUBSTANTIVES.

ሚደ: { "outside," "abroad,"
 "within."
ነጋ: "to-morrow."
ማልጃ: "early in the morning."
ቀድሞ: "before," "previously."

ORIGINAL ADJECTIVES.

መልካም: "well," "properly."
ቅርብ: "near."
ክፋ: "badly."
ደህና: "well," "safely."
ተላቅ: "largely," "greatly."
አጅግ: "much," "very."

Besides these, perhaps every other Adjective may be used adverbially.

Simple Adverbs derived from Verbs:

አይደለም: "no."
የህል: "nearly," "about."
ይልቅ: "more" (*magis*).

ይቅር: Particle of forgiveness; *e.g.*
ይቅር: **ይላል**: "he forgives."

The Simple Constructive Mood is altogether used for Adverbs; *e.g.*

ደግሞ: } "again."
መልሶ: }
ማልጃ: "early in the morning."
ቅርብ: "near."
ብሎ: "saying," "thinking."
አብር: "together."

በዛቸ: "more."
ቀድሞ: "before," "previously."
አስቀድሞ: { "before," "in the
 beginning."
ጉድሎ: "wanting," "but."
አድርጎ: "doing."

Adverbs of uncertain origin are:

በጀ: (Shoa, **ባቡ**: and **ባሰኝ**;) "readily," "with pleasure!"

4. Compound Adverbs are formed, (a) by Prepositions and Nouns; (b) by Prepositions and Pronouns; (c) by Nouns and Nouns; (d) by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.

(a) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Nouns.*

በውሥጥ: { "internally," "within,"
"inside."

በሚያ: { "externally," "without,"
"outside."

በጥሩ: { "well," "safely," "in
health," "successfully"

በጥቂት: { "by little," "in a low
degree."

በጥቂት: በጥቂት: { "by little and
little," "gradually."

በጅግ: { "in a high degree," "in a
great measure."

በልክ: { "with measure," "mode-
rately."

በፍርሃት: { "with fear," "fearfully,"
"shyly," "cowardly."

በድፋረት: { "boldly," "courage-
ously."

በጀስታ: "joyfully."

ከለልብ: { "from the heart,"
"heartily."

በፈቃድ: "willingly."

ባእምር: { "rationally," "reason-
ably."

በጥርት: "kindly."

በምህረት: { "graciously," "mer-
cifully."

በፊት: "before," "previously."

በጥዋት: "in the morning."

በቀትር: "at noon."

በማታ: "in the evening."

በሊት: } "at night."

በሊት: }

ከድር: "from time immemorial."

በኋላ: "after," "afterwards."

በቀደም: "before."

በረቅ: "afar off," "at a distance."

በታች: "below."

ከታች: "from below."

ከበኋላ: "from behind."

በላይ: "above."

ከላይ: "from above."

በጣም: "entirely."

ለዘላለም: "for ever."

ከበፊት: { "from before," "from a
former time."

ከበላይ: "from above."

ከበታች: "from below."

(b) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Pronouns.*

በዚህ: (Shoa, በይህ: } "here,"
& በዚህ:) } "herein."

ከዚህ: (Shoa, ከይህ: } "here,"
& በዚህ:) } "from here,"
"hence."

ወደዚህ: { (Shoa,
ወደዚህ: } "hither."
& ሀዚህ: }

እንደዚህ: } "so," "thus."

እንዲህ: }

እንዲህ: "henceforth," "hence."

በዚያ: (Shoa, በያ: } "there,"
& በዛ:) } "therein."

ከዚያ: (Shoa, ሀዛ:) } "there,"
"from there,"
"thence."

ወደዚያ: } "thither," "after,"
ወዲያ: } "beyond."

እስከዚያ: } "so far."

እስተዚያ: }

ከዚያ: ወዲያ: "afterwards."

ከንጊደህ: ወደህ: { "from hence- forth."	አንጂት: "how?"
እስከዚህ: } "so far," "as far as እስተዚህ: } this," "up to this."	አንጂታ: "to be sure!"
በየት: } "where?"	በስተያ: "after."
ወደት: } "whence?" "where- ከወደት: } from?"	ለምን: } "why?" ለመንድር: } "wherefore?" ስለ: ምን: } "on what ac- ስለ: ምንድር: } count?"

(c) *Adverbs formed by Nouns (Pronouns, Numerals) and Nouns.*

ዕለት: ዕለት: { "every day," "daily."	ሁላገዜ: { "always," "continually," "constantly."
አፍ: ላፍ: { "mouth to mouth," i.e. "by word of mouth," "vivā voce."	አንደገዜ: "once." (See Numerals.)
ፊት: ለፊት: { "opposite," "over against each other."	የዚያን: ጊዜ: { "then," "at that time."
	ምናልባት: "perhaps."

(d) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.*

በፊት: "by the head-side."	በግር: "by the foot-side."
በጀት: "by the hand-side."	በደጀት: "near the door," &c.

5. *Inseparable Adverbs* are but few.

አ—:	} "not."
አል—ም:	
አ—ም:	

አል — : non—, in—, &c. አየ — : Distributive Particle.

—ን: Interrogative Particle.

The *Negative Particles* አ—: አል—ም: and አ—ም: are joined to the Finite Verb. አል—ም: is used throughout the Preterite, and with the 1st pers. sing. of the Present Tense. In the other personal forms, the ል: is ejected, and አ—ም: remains. The mere አ—: is used in the Subjunctive, and in all cases where the Negative Verb receives any additional Prefixes; e.g.

PRETERITE.

አልመጣም: "he came not."
 አልመጣችም: "she came not."
 አልመጣህም: "thou (m.) } camest
 አልመጣሽም: "thou (f.) } not."
 አልመጣሁም: "I came not."
 አልመጡም: "they }
 አልመጣችሁም: "you } came
 አልመጣንም: "we } not."

SUBJUNCTIVE.

አይምጣ: "let him not come."
 አትምጣ: "let her not come."
 አትምጣ: m. }
 አትምጧ: f } "do not thou come."
 አይምጡ: }
 አትምጡ: } "do not you (hon.)
 አትምጡ: } come."
 ላልመጣ: "I must not come."
 አይምጡ: "let them not come."
 አትምጡ: "do ye not come."
 ላንመጣ: "let us not come."

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

አይመጣም: "he } does not
 አትመጣም: "she } come."
 አትመጣም: } "thou dost not
 አትመጧም: } come."
 አልመጣም: "I * }
 አይመጡም: "they } do not
 አትመጡም: "you } come."
 አንመጣም: "we }

With additional Prefixes, which absorb
 the አ::

ባይሔድ: "if he do not go."
 የማትመለስ: { "(thou) who doest
 not return."
 እንደተደረገ: { "that thou mayest
 not do."
 ሳይበላ: { "without (his) eating,"
 or "before he eats."
 ሳልማር: "before I learn."

አለ—: is prefixed to Infinitives; e.g. አለማወቅ: "ignorance,"
 i.e. the not knowing, non-intelligence. አለማመን: "unbelief."
 አለመታዘዝ: "disobedience," "insubordination," &c.

—ን: (in Shoa —ወይ:) is a Particle of Interrogation, and affixed to
 any part of speech; e.g. ይህን: ከን: "Art thou well?" እርሱን:
 ይህን: አደረገ: "Has he done this?"

CHAP. VI.

ON THE PREPOSITIONS, OR PARTICLES OF RELATION.

1. The term "Prepositions" for that part of speech which falls under the
 consideration of this Chapter, is not entirely suitable. It is a class which
 determines the relation between Nouns, Pronouns, or Verbs; and which,
 because in our European languages they are generally placed *before* the

* Mark the difference in pronunciation of the 1st pers. Present from the 3d pers. Preterite.
 The latter is pronounced "Almat'am"; the former "Alëmat'am." In the 3d pers. sing. of the
 Preterite, the ል: is mute; but in the 1st pers. sing. of the Present, it is sounded, because in
 the latter the Preformative እ: which the ል: absorbs, must be heard.

object of relation, have been called *Prepositions*, but would be better called *Particles of Relation*; as this term would suit also in cases where the *Particle* is placed behind its object.

2. The Amharic Particles of Relation are partly *Simple*, partly *Compound*. The Simple ones are always *Pre-positions*; the Compound ones consist of *Pre-* and *Postpositions*. The Simple Prepositions are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*. The *Simple Separable Prepositions* are the following:

ሰለ: "for," "for the sake of," "in behalf," "instead of," "in favour of,"
"because," "on account of," "concerning," "on."

ወደ: "to," "towards."

ያለ: "without."

እንደ: "as," "like as," "according to," "in proportion to."

እስከ: "to," "up to," "reaching to," "till," "until."

Inseparable Prepositions are, **ለ** — : **በ** — : **ከ** — : **ጥ** — : **ገ** — : or **ሀ** — :
እየ — ::

ለ — : "to," "unto," "in favour of," "to the benefit of," "belonging to."

በ — : "in," "on," "upon," "at," "by," "through," "with," "against,"
"for (in exchange)," "over."

ከ — : "of," "out of," "from," "(more) than," "to."

ጥ — : "with (company)."

ገ — : or **ሀ** — : vulgar, instead of **ከ** — : and of **በ** — ::

እየ — : "in proportion to," "according to," &c., and Distributive.

Illustrations of the preceding Simple Prepositions.

(a) **ሰለ: እግዚአብሔር:** "For God's sake."

ሰለ: ንጢአቴ: እሞታለሁ: "I die *on account* (because) of my sins."

ሰለንተ: መጣ: "He came *on thy account*."

ሰለ: ወደጄ: ደደክማል: "He labours *for* (in behalf of) his friend."

ሰለ: ምንድር: "wherefore?"

ይህች: ምዕራፍ: ስለ: ሃይማኖት: ትናገራለች: "This chapter treats *on* faith."

(b) **እንደ: ሰው:** "as a man," "according to (the manner of) men."

እንደ: ጴጥርስ: "like as," or "resembling Peter."

እንደ: ፈቃድ: ያደርጋል: "He does *according to* his will," ("as he likes").

እንደ: ኃይሉ: "In *proportion to* his strength."

(c) **ወደ: ሐበሻ: ሔደ:** "He went *to* Abyssinia."

ፊቱን: ወደርሱ: አደረገ: "He set his face *towards* him."

(d) **እስከ**: (sometimes **እስተ**;) is seldom used without a following **ድረስ**:, but sometimes it is used by itself; *e.g.*

እስከ: ጎንደር: ደሔደል: "It goes *as far as* Gondar," ("up to Gondar").

(e) **ለ**—: is used as a Universal Dative; *e.g.*

ለኔ: ሰጠው: "He gave it *to* me."

ለኔ: ነው: "It belongs *to* me."

ለምን: (ለምንድር): "what *for*?" ("wherefore?")

ላክልኝ: signifies both "send *to* me," and "send *for* me," (in my favour, or behalf, to somebody else).

(f) **በ****ቤት**: "*in* the house."

በእግዚአብሔር: ያምናል: "He believes *in* God."

በወንጌል: ያስተምራል: "He teaches (*in*) the Gospel."

በጥዋት: "*in* the morning."

በቀትር: "*at* noon."

በምድር: "on earth," "on the ground."

በድንገት: "*on* a sudden."

በሉንደን: "*at* (in) London."

በደጀ: "*at* the door."

ጸድቅ: በሃይማኖት: ይድናል: "The just shall live *by* faith."

በገሐርቶ: በምድር: "*By* sea and *by* land."

በሚያስችለኝ: በክርስቶስ: "*Through* him that strengtheneth me; *through* Christ."

በወርቅ፣ በብር: ገዛው: "*With* gold and *with* silver did he purchase it."

ጸላቴ: መጣበኝ: "My enemy came *upon* (against) me."

ይፈረድበታል: "He judges *over* him" (or, in contrast with **ለ**—: "pronounces judgment *against*, condemns him.")

ይቅር: በላኔ: በኛ: ያለውን: "Forgive us that which is *against* us;" *i.e.* "forgive us our debts," Matt. vi. 12.

በስድስት: ብር: ይሽጠዋል: "He sells it *for* six dollars."

ድል: ነሣበት: "He gained the victory *over* him."

(g) **ከ****ቤት**: **ወጣ**: "He went *out of* his house."

ከርሱ: ወሰድሁት: "I took it *from* him."

ከኔ: ይበልጣል: "He is greater *than* I."

ከርሱ: ያንሳል: "He is inferior *to* him."

(h, i) **ጥ**: and **ዓ**: or **ሀ**: are frequently used in vulgar, but not in good language. (See the Dictionary.)

(k) **አዎ**—: is a Preposition, Distributive and of Proportion. It is related to **አንድ**: and has been mentioned already with the Numerals as a Distributive Particle. Other instances are these: **አዋሃድ**: “according to its kind.” **አዋረዓቱ**: “in his respective order.”

3. The Compound Particles of Relation are formed by any of the Simple Prepositions, connected with Nouns, or other Particles. The latter (Postpositions) are either directly joined to the former, or follow after the Noun or Pronoun to which they refer. We shall first give here a list of Postpositions; then show how they are combined with Simple Prepositions; and afterwards exhibit their use, by expressions of daily occurrence in conversation.

List of Postpositions.

ውስጥ: “the inside.”

ኋላ: “what is behind.”

ላይ: “high,” “upper,” “elevated.”

ፊት: “face,” “fore-part,” “surface.”

ታች: “that which is below.”

አጠገብ: “the side.”

መካከል: “the middle.”

ዙሪያ: “surrounding place.”

አንጻር: “front.”

ዘንድ: } particles of company.
ጋራ: }

ድረስ: particle of extent.

መጠን: “proportion.”

ልክ: “measure.”

በቀር: particle of omission.

እኩል: “equal,” “equality.”

መክንያት: “reason,” “cause.”

ፈንታ: “portion,” “stead,” “part.”

They are thus combined with Simple Prepositions:

በውስጥ: and **በ**—: **ውስጥ**: “within,” “inside.”

በኩል: “about,” “in the vicinity,” “direction.”

በዙሪያ: and **በ**—: **ዙሪያ**: “surrounding,” “round about.”

በፊት: “before,” “previous to,” “in sight of,” “in front of.”

በኋላ: and **ከ**—: **ኋላ**: “behind,” “after.”

በታች: and **ከ**—: **ታች**: “below,” “under.”

በ—: **ዘንድ**: “by,” “with.”

ከ—: **ዘንድ**: “from,” “from with.”

እስከ: —: **ድረስ**: “till,” “up to,” “to,” “as far as.”

በ—: **ልክ**: “in proportion to.”

በመክንያት: and **በ**—**መክንያት**: “for the sake of,” “on account of,” “because of.”

በላይ: and ከ—: በላይ: “on,” “upon,” “above,” “over,” “against.”

ባጠገብ: “beside,” “by.”

በመካከል: and በ—: መካከል: “among,” “between.”

ከ—: ጋራ: “with,” “together with.”

በመጠን: and በ—: መጠን: “in proportion to.”

ከ—: በቀር: “without,” “excepting.”

በ—: ፈንታ: “instead of.”

ባንጻር: and በ—: አንጻር: “in front of,” “opposite.”

Instances for illustration:

በወሥጡ: “within him.”

ባገር: ወሥጥ: “within the country.”

በሉንደን: በኩል: “in the vicinity of London.”

ከቀትር: በኋላ: “after midday,” i.e. “in the afternoon.”

በታችን: “under us.”

ከሳድቃ: በታች: “under the table.”

በኔ: ዘንድ: “with or by me.”

ከጌታው: ዘንድ: መጣ: “He came from (from with) his master.”

እስከ: ዛሬ: ድረስ: “to this day.”

እስከ: ነጋ: ድረስ: “till to-morrow.”

በዚያ: ልክ: “in that measure,” i.e. so large &c. as that.

በመክንያትህ: “on thy account,” “for thy sake.”

በልጄ: መክንያት: “because of his son.”

በዙርያው: “round about him.”

ባገር: ዙርያ: “in the environs of (round about) the town.”

በፊታቸው: ሔደ: “he went before them.”

በምድር: ላይ: “on the earth.”

ከቤቱ: በላይ: “above his house.”

በስፍራ: አጠገብ: “by the side of the place.”

በንጉሥ: ላይ: ተነሣ: “He rose against the king.”

በሰዎች: መካከል: “among men.”

በኔ: በርኩ: መካከል: “between me and him.”

ካባቱ: ጋራ: ሔደ: “He went with his father.”

በውቀቱ: መጠን: “in proportion to his knowledge.”

ሁላቸው: ከርኩ: በቀር: ይጽፋሉ: “They all write excepting him.”

በኔ: ፈንታ: ይቀበላል: “He receives it, instead of me.”

በቤት: አንጻር: “opposite the house.”

CHAP. VII.

ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The *Amharic Conjunctions* are either Separable or Inseparable.

2. The *Separable Conjunctions* are as follows:

(a) *Copulative, and Reiterative*: ደግሞ: "also," "again."

(b) *Adversative*, ግን: "however," "but."

ደር:	}	"but."	ካይቀር:	}	"notwithstanding," "nevertheless."
ነር: ግን:			እንጂ:		
ደር: ግን:			እንጂ: "but," unless."		

(c) *Disjunctive*:

ወይ:	}	"or."	ወይስ:—	:	ወይስ:—	:"either—," "or—": with Negation, "neither."
ወይም:						
ወይስ:						

(d) *Causal*: እንደ: "that." ዘንድ: "in order that," "in order to."

(e) *Conditional*, እንደሆነ: (Shoa, እንጂ:) "if."

(f) *Conclusive*, ስለዚህ: "therefore."

3. The *Inseparable Conjunctions* are these:

(a) *Copulative*, —ም: —ፍ: "and," "also."

ካ—: ጥ—: "and," "by," (in counting).

(b) *Copulative and Adversative*:—ስ:—ካ:: "as for," "but," "indeed,"
"but."

(c) *Conditional*:

ስ—:	}	"if." With the Negative አ: (ካ:) "if not," "unless."
ከ—:		
ብ—:		

(d) *Conjunction of time*, ስ—: "when," "while."

Negat. ካ—: "ere," "before," "without."

(e) *Final and Conditional*: እንደ—: "that," "if," "to."

ለ—: "that," "in order that."

(f) *Intensive*, እስክ—: "so that," "so as to."

እስክ—: ድረስ: "until," "till."

(g) *Comparative*, ክ—: "than that."

(h) *Causal*, —ፍ: "for," "because."

NOTE.—The junction of these Particles to Verbs is effected according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII.

ILLUSTRATIONS:

ንጉሥ፡ ንግሥት፡ መጡ፡ ሔደዎ፡ “The king *and* the queen came *and* went.”

ደር፡ ሉላልታቸው፡ ተቀመጡ፡ “But their servants remained”; or,
ሉላልታቸው፡ ገን፡ ተቀመጡ፡

መቶ፡ ካምሳ፡ “One hundred and fifty.”

እርሱ፡ ደግሞ፡ እንደህ፡ አለኝ፡ “He *also* told me so.”

ይህ፡ ሁሉ፡ ሳይቀር፡ “Notwithstanding all this.”

ይህን፡ አልባም፡ ያን፡ እንጂ፡ “I do not want this, *but* that.”

ምንን፡ ትፈልጋለህ፡ መጽሐፉን፡ ወይስ፡ ብረን፡ “What doest thou want, the book *or* the money?”

ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ልታድርግ፡ “Either this *or* that must thou do (art thou to do).”

እርሱስ፡ እንደ፡ ሔደ፡ አየሁ፡ ነገር፡ ገን፡ አንተ፡ እንድትከት፡ አልሔደም፡ “Indeed, that he has gone, I have seen; *but* in order that thou shouldst be lazy, he did not go,” (“was not his object in going”).

እማር፡ ዘንድ፡ (or ልማር፡) እወደለሁ፡ “I like to learn.”

መጽሐፍ፡ ባገኝ፡ በወደድሁ፡ “I should like to get a book.”

ክትጫወት፡ ብትማረ፡ ይቻላል፡ “If thou learnest, that will be better for thee *than* if thou playest.”

አንተ፡ ብትለምን፡ እርሱ፡ ቢሰጠህ፡ ነበር፡ “If thou wouldst ask, he would give thee.”

ጌታው፡ ሲቀመጥ፡ ሉሉ፡ ይሔዳል፡ “While the master remains, the servant goes.”

እስክመጣ፡ ድረስ፡ ቀይልኝ፡ “Wait for me *till* I come.”

መምጣትስ፡ እመጣለሁ፡ “As for coming, I shall come.”

አንተሳ፡ “But thou?” (emphatic, “what wilt thou do?”)

ታምዋል፡ አይመጣም፡ “Because he is sick, he does not come.”



CHAP. VIII.

ON THE INTERJECTIONS.

1. We notice first those Particles which, when combined with the Verbs **አለ**: **አደረገ**: and **አሰኘ**:, constitute Verbs (See Ch. V. 2.); but when used by themselves, are Interjections. They are the following:

Particles	Signification.	Particles	Signification.
ዘም : of silence,	{ "tush!" "quiet!"	አሽ : of compliance,	{ "yes," "readily."
ቀሰ : of caution,	{ "mind!" "softly!"	አምሳ : of refusing,	"I will not!"
ተሉ : of haste,	"quickly!"	አላላ : of exultation,	{ "hurrah!" "huzzah!"
ክትት : of completion	{ "done!" "finished!" "full!"		

2. The remaining Particles of Exclamation are as follows:

ሀይ : of address, "oh!"	አይ : { of commise- ration, } "oh!"
ቀላ : of expulsion, "begone!"	ወዋ : of lamentation, { "alas!" "woe!"
አወይ : of joy, "eh!" "aha!"	ዋይ : { of lamentation & abhorrence, } { "woe!" "alas!" "fie!"
አሳህ : of attention, { "look!" "behold!"	ዕፁብ : } of asto- { "oh wonder!" "dear me!"
አረገ : { contradiction, "oh!" complaint, "far be it!" abhorrence, "fie!"	ወይ ጉድ : } nishment
አቢት : { of courtesy, "Sir!" of address, "O Lord!"	
አኮ : } of assent, { "to be sure!" "no doubt!"	
አንጂት : }	
ቢዛ : { of sudden sympathy, { "I hope you have not hurt yourself!" <i>lit.</i> "substitute," i.e. I should have preferred the accident to have happened to me, instead of you!	

PART III.—SYNTAX.
ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS,
AND THEIR
CONSTRUCTION INTO SENTENCES.

CHAP. I.

ON THE NATURE OF SENTENCES, ESPECIALLY IN THE AMHARIC
LANGUAGE.

1. A *sentence* is an aggregate of words expressing a judgment of the mind. It is either simple, complex, or compound. The constituent parts of every sentence are, a subject, an attribute, a copula, and an object; the latter, however, being less necessary than the three former. *Simple* sentences are such as have nothing but these parts; *e.g.*

ምድር፡ ሰፊ፡ ነች፡ "The earth is spacious."

ንጉሥ፡ መጣ፡ "The king has come."

አንበሳ፡ ፈረሰን፡ ገደለ፡ "The lion killed a horse."

NOTE.—The Copula, or Joining Verb, which connects the subject with the attribute, is frequently joined with the latter in one and the same verb; *e.g.* **ንጉሥ፡ መጣ፡** :: Here **መጣ፡** contains the attribute of **ንጉሥ፡** ("king"), which is, "one that came," together with the Copulative Verb "is."

2. *Complex* sentences are such as are amplified by qualifying words in connection with either the subject or the attribute; *e.g.*

ልጄ፡ ዛሬ፡ መጣ፡ "My son came to-day."

Here is the subject, **ልጄ፡** "son," qualified by the pronoun *ፈ*, "my," and the attribute "who came," (contained in the verb **መጣ፡** "came," with the copula "is,") by the adverb **ዛሬ፡** "to-day."

3. *Compound* sentences are such as have either the subject, or the attribute, or the object, or all of them, augmented by additional or explanatory parts; *e.g.*

ወተደር፣ ነጋዴ፡ ገባረም፡ የሚጠቅሙ፡ ሰዎች፡ ናቸው፡

"The soldier, the merchant, and the farmer, are useful men."

CHAP. II.

ON THE SUBJECT AND THE ATTRIBUTE, AND THEIR RELATION TO EACH OTHER.

SECTION I.—*On the Subject.*

1. The *subject* is the principal or the reigning part of every sentence: it therefore stands always in the *Nominative Case*: *e.g.*

ሰው፡ ይሞታል፡ “man dies.”

2. The ideal subject is always a Noun Substantive: the grammatical subject may be a Substantive, Adjective, Numeral, Pronoun, an Infinitive, or Participle: for words which express no perfect ideas by themselves, *i.e.* which are not substances, cannot form subjects of thought, unless they be at least ideally converted into substantives.

3. In every sentence, the subject precedes; the attribute and the copula follow; *e.g.*

እርሱ፡ ደህ፡ ነው፡ “He is good.”

This is always the case, whether the Subject be simple, defined, complex, or compound.

4. When the Subject is specified by a Substantive, an Adjective, a Numeral, Pronoun, or Participle, the specifying words precede; *e.g.*

የሰው፡ ልብ፡ ክፋ፡ ነው፡ “Man’s heart is evil.”

በጎ፡ ሰው፡ ይከብራል፡ “A good man is honoured.”

ሰባት፡ ቀን፡ አለፈ፡ “Seven days passed.”

ይህ፡ ቤት፡ ሰፊ፡ ነው፡ “This house is spacious.”

የተሠራ፡ ቤት፡ ሰፊ፡ ነው፡ “The house which has been built, is spacious.”

እግዚአብሔርን፡ መፍራት፡ ከላንት፡ ጋራ፡ ይሁን፡

“May the fear of the Lord be with you.”—2 Chron. xix. 7.

5. A Compound Subject, which consists of several Nouns, Numerals, or Pronouns, has all these parts in the Nominative Case; *e.g.*

ሰማይ፡ ምድር፡ ያልፋሉ፡ “Heaven and earth shall pass away.”

እልዎ፡ መቶ፡ ከሰማንያ፡ ሰዎች፡ ሔዱ፡ “Those hundred and eighty men have gone.”

6. Where the Subject is connected with subordinate explanatory parts, it follows after them; *e.g.* Luke xii. 47.

**የጌተውን፡ ፈቃድ፡ አውቆ፡ ያልተዘጋጀ፡ እንደ፡ ፈቃዱም፡
ያላደረገ፡ ባርያ፡ እጅግ፡ ያገረፋል፡**

Literally: "His Lord's will knowing who prepared not himself, according to his will and did not the servant, much shall be scourged;"
i.e. "That servant who knew his Lord's will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be severely scourged."

These two rules, No. 4, and 6, are so peculiarly in the Amharic idiom, that they cannot fail to impress themselves at once upon the mind of the Student.

SECTION II.

On the Attribute, and its relations to the Subject.

1. The Attribute may be a Substantive, or an Adjective, or Pronoun, or Participle: it may be separate, or implied in the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

እግዚአብሔር፡ መንፈስ፡ ነው፡ "God is *a Spirit*."

ደህ፡ ሰው፡ አዋቂ፡ ነው፡ "This man is *intelligent*."

ነገሩ፡ ደህ፡ ነው፡ "The matter is *this*."

ፈቃዱ፡ የተቀረጠ፡ ነው፡ "His resolution is *decided*." Acts xix. 7.

ሰዎችም፡ አሥራ፡ ሁለት፡ ነበሩ፡ "And the men were *twelve*."

እርሱ፡ ይፈራል፡ "He fears," *i.e.* "is *fearing*."

2. Complex Attributes (see Ch. I. 2.) have their subordinate parts before them.

EXAMPLE.

ደህ፡ ሰው፡ በስራው፡ ሁሉ፡ ተንኮለኛ፡ ነው፡

Lit. "This man, in his work all, is cunning"—"is cunning in all his doings."

3. The Attribute always follows the Subject. This is evident from the preceding instances.

4. It often agrees with the Subject in Gender, Number, and Case: often does not. As to the Gender, the concordance may be assumed, most of the Nominal forms being of Common Gender; and, in the Adjective Participles at least, the Gender is strictly attended to. Concerning Number, the Singular is more used in Adjectives than the Plural; which may be accounted for by the supposition, that they are regarded as an abstract mass, of which the individual subjects have their share; *e.g.*

እሌህ፡ ሰዎች፡ ደህ፡ ናቸው፡ "These men are good."

But when the Attribute is a Relative Participle, it must agree in Number,

as well as in Gender, Case, and Person, (see Page 73.) with its subject; *e.g.*

ሉላልቱ፡ ቦታሙ፡ ፍቸው፡፡ "His servants are faithful."

The Number is especially uncertain, when the Subject is a Collective Noun; *e.g.*

ሰው፡ ሁሉ፡ ደሞታል፡ "All men (or every man) dies."

ሕዝቡ፡ ተሰበሰቡት፡ (Sing.) or **ተሰበሰቡ፡** (Pl.) "The people was (or were) gathered together."

With regard to Case, we remember but one instance where the Subject and the Attribute do not agree; **ብቻ፡** with Suffixes; *e.g.*

እኔ፡ ብቻዬን፡ ነኝ፡ "I am alone."

Here is the Subject **እኔ፡** in the Nominative, and the Attribute **ብቻዬን፡** in the Accusative Case.

CHAP. III.

VARIOUS USES AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOUN.

A. *Construction of Substantives with Substantives.*

1. Two or more Substantives connected together, denoting the same thing, are in a state of apposition, and must agree in Gender and Number; *e.g.*

እግዚአብሔር፡ አምላክ፡ "The Lord God."

ወንድ፡ ባርያ፡ "a man-slave."

ንጉሥ፡ ደዊት፡ "King David," & **ደዊት፡ ንጉሥ፡** "David, the king."

ቫንክሎች፡ ባሮች፡ "Negroes," "slaves"; *i.e.* "Negro-slaves."

2. Nouns of *Quantity* are joined to other Substantives in the Nominative Case; *e.g.*

ጥቂት፡ ብር፡ "a little silver."

አንድ፡ ነጥር፡ ቡን፡ "one pound (of) coffee."

አንድ፡ ጎምቦ፡ ውኃ፡ "one jar (of) water."

3. Substantives of *Quality*, of *Origin*, or of *Possession*, are joined to other Substantives. They stand in the Genitive Case; *e.g.*

የደንጊያ፡ ቤት፡ "a house (made) of stone."

የጤፍ፡ ጣቢታ፡ "Têff-bread-cakes."

ያገር፡ ሰው፡ "a man of the country"; or the Ethiopic expression,
ባላገር፡፡

የገባረ፡ ማረቫ፡ "the farmer's plough."

More about this when we come to speak of the Genitive Case. (See p. 167.)

4. On the construction of Object-Substantives with Subject-Substantives we shall speak when coming to consider the Verb. (See Ch. VIII.)

B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives.

Adjectives may be connected with Substantives, (a) either as epithets to the Subject; or (b) as Attributes of the sentence; or (c) as modified by another accompanying Substantive.

1. As *Epitheton* of a Substantive, the Adjective generally *precedes* the latter; e.g. **በጎ ሰው**: "a good man."

2. In Number and Gender, the Epithetic Adjective does not always agree with its Substantive; but the following rules are observed:

(a) The Substantive may be in the Plural, and the Adjective in the Singular Number; never the reverse; e.g.

ደህና መጽሐፍት: "good books"; never **ደህናት መጽሐፍት**:

(b) In the same manner, the Adjective is most frequently used in the Masculine form, when the Substantive is of Feminine Gender; but a Feminine Adjective is never used for a Masculine Substantive; e.g.

ክፋ ሴት: "a bad woman," but not **ንጹሕት**:* **ወንድ**: "a pure man."

3. The preceding paragraph refers not to Participial Adjectives of the Relative form, as in them the strictest attention is paid both to Number and Gender. (See Page 163. §. 4.)

4. When the Adjective is *attribute* to the sentence, the rules laid down in the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. §§ 3, 4. obtain.

5. When another qualifying Substantive is connected with the Adjective, a Relative Participle is required as complement; e.g.

በልባቸው ንጹሕን ያሉ ሰዎች: "Men who are pure in their hearts."

C. Number of Nouns.

There is a strong tendency in the Abyssinians to use the Singular Number, where we would use the Plural. We shall point out several cases where the latter never, and others where it but seldom is used, although it would be impossible, in the present stage of our knowledge of the

* We do not quote **ክፋሊት**:, the Feminine form of **ክፋ**:, because it is not used in the Amharic, nor the Participle **የክፋት**:: because, when Adjective-Participles are used, the Gender and Number is always strictly attended to. (See the preceding Chap. Sect. II. § 4.)

Amharic language, to give rules for every case, and would exceed the bounds which must be assigned to this head. The following classes are, some of them, never, others, seldom used in the Plural:

1. Nouns denoting a mass; as, gold, silver, corn, wheat, honey, fat, dust, &c.

2. Several parts of the animal body; *e.g.*

ልብ: "the heart."

ሥጋ: "flesh."

ሀድ: "the belly."

ጸጉር: "hair."

ደም: "blood."

3. The soul, and several powers and faculties of the mind:

ገፈብ: "the soul."

ወድ: "love."

ፈቃድ: "the will."

ፍቅር: "charity."

አሳብ: "thought."

ደስታ: "joy."

ልቦና: "reason."

አለንጌታ: "hope."

4. Most Abstract Nouns, denoting quality, condition, action, quantity. We especially refer to the two Tables of Nominal Forms. Table I: Triliteral Radices of Verbs, No. 5. and Quadriliteral ones of No. 4. Table II: Simple Forms of 3. A. a. 4. 6.; and Augmented Forms, 1. a. c.; some of *d.*; and almost all of *e.*

5. The following Collective Nouns are not often used in the Plural:

(a) Generical names of animals and of plants; *e.g.*

ጅብ: "hyæna."

አበባ: "flower."

(b) Names of assemblages of men, or other beings; *e.g.* ወገን: "tribe," "sect," "kind," &c. The Plural of this word, ወገኖች: signifies the individuals belonging to the whole assemblage. ሸንጎ: "court of justice," አገር: "town," "country," and other words.

6. Certain periods of time: ቀን: "day." ሊት: and ሌሊት: "night." ሰዓት: "hour." ቀትር: "noon." ረፋድ: "forenoon." These are never used in the Plural number. Seldom: ጊዜ: "time." ዘመን: "time," "period." አመት: "year." ሳምንት: "week."

7. Several Nouns denoting confines, borders, shores, &c.; *e.g.* ደር: "banks," "shores," "coast." ደርቻ: "borders." ወሰን: "confines," "borders." ዘርፍ: "seam," "hem."

8. As to the agreement in Number between Nouns in the same sentence, either Subjects or Attributes, see the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. 4.; and in this Chapter, A. 1. and B. 2.

D. On the Various Cases of Declension.

1. The *Nominative* is, in common conversation, often improperly used

where the Preposition **ወደ**: should stand; *e.g.* **አንገላላ ሔደ**: "He went Angollala," omitting **ወደ**: "to."

2. It is applied in answer to the question, How long? How often? How much? *e.g.*

ሶስት ቀን ተቀመጠ: "He remained three days."

ብዙ ጊዜ መጣ: "He came many times."

አንድ ማድጋ ገብሰ: "One mādēga (a certain measure) barley."

3. The Genitive Case expresses:

(a) *Possession*:

የባቴ ቤት: "My father's house." **የንጉሥ ኃይል**: "The king's power."

(b) *Origin*:

የምድር ፍሬ: "The fruit of the earth."

የሐበሻ ሰው: "A man of (from) Abyssinia," *i.e.* "An Abyssinian."

(c) *Quality*:

የብረት እቃ: "Iron furniture." **የደንጊያ ቤት**: "A house of stone."

Here it supplies the place of Adjectives.

(d) *Measure* of time, space:

የሰባት አመት ስራ: "The work of seven years."

የሁለት ቀን መንገድ: "Two days' journey."

(e) *Price and Quantity*:

ያንድ ብር ቡን: "One dollar's (worth) of coffee."

4. When Prepositions precede the word which stands in the Genitive Case, the **P**: is dropped. See Part I. Ch. VII. 3. B.

5. When an Accusative follows the Genitive, the latter adopts the mark **ን**: of the former, so that the word seems to stand both in the Genitive and in the Accusative; *e.g.*

ያገርን ከተማ አየሁ: "I have seen the capital of the country."

የእግዚአብሔርን የምላክህን ስም ከንጉ አታድርገው:

"Thou shalt not use the name of the Lord thy God in vain." Ex. xx. 7.

6. When the Genitive belongs to several Substantives in apposition, its **P**: is to be applied to each; when to a Substantive preceded by an Epithetical Adjective, it is applied only to the Adjective; *e.g.*

የደዊት የንጉሥ የነቢይ መዝሙራት: "The Psalms of David, (of) the King, and (of) the Prophet."

የደህና ሰው ነገር: "The words of a good man."

7. When the Genitive belongs to a Substantive having several Epithetic

Adjectives, the **P**: is applied to each Adjective, and may, or may not, be applied to the Substantive also; *e.g.*

የተላቅፍ የጠቢብ የባላጠጋም የሰሎሞን ቤተ መቅደስ:
or **የተላቅፍ የጠቢብ የባላጠጋም ሰሎሞን ቤተ መቅደስ::**

"The temple of the great, wise, and wealthy Solomon."

8. The Ethiopic Genitive, or Status Constructus, has been mentioned, Part II. Ch. I. Sect. I. 4. and Sect. V. 2.

9. The *Dative* being formed by the prefixion of the Preposition **ለ**: (*to, for, in favour, in behalf, &c.*) to the Noun, we need only to refer to what has been said, Part II. Ch. VI. 2. *e.*

10. The *Accusative* Case is formed by the annexion of **ን**: at the end: it serves to indicate the immediate or direct action of the Subject upon its object; and is required by all Active, Intensive, Transitive, and Causative Verbs; *e.g.*

ሰውን ለደደ: "He sent a man."

Although this rule is very plain, it may not be superfluous to specify it a little. The Accusative is governed—

(a) By the Verb Finite; *e.g.*

መልእክትን ይጽፋል: "He writes a letter."

ተግባርህን አድርግ: "Do thy business."

በትረን ይዞ ሔደ: "He took his stick, and went."

(b) By the Infinitive; *e.g.*

በጎውን ስራ መስራት አያውቅም: "He knows not to perform (cannot perform) good works."

(c) By Relative Participles; *e.g.*

ይህንን ያደረገ: "He who has done this."

ልጁን የሚወድ: "He that loves his child."

(d) By Nominal Active Participles; *e.g.*

ቤትን ወረ: "One that builds a house."

11. Besides Active Verbs, there are a few phrases in which the Accusative is used; *e.g.*

መንገዴን እሔዳለሁ: "I go my way."

ቤቱን ገባ: "He entered his house."

ብቻ: "alone," "single," with Suffixes, assumes the Accusative form, when it is converted into an Adverb; *e.g.*

ብቻውን ነበረ: "He was by himself."

12. When the Noun which stands in the Accusative terminates in a

letter of the third, fourth, fifth, or seventh order, a euphonic **ው**: is joined before the accusative **ን**:: *e.g.*

ጠባቂውን፡ መንጋውንም፡ በረውንም፡ ቀበሮውንም፡ አየሁ፡

"I saw the herdsman, the herd, the oxen, and the fox."

12. Relative Participles in **ህ**, standing in the Accusative, have a euphonic **ት**: before the accusative **ን**:: *e.g.*

የየሁትን፡ የገደሉትንም፡ በረ፡ "The ox which I saw, and which they killed."

13. Accusative Nouns ending in the sixth order are euphonicallly changed into the second; Accusative Participles, into the first order; the latter receiving a euphonic **ው**:: *e.g.*

መልካሙን፡ ጻፏ፡ "good wine."

የደረገህውን፡ ኃጢአት፡ "The sin which thou hast committed."

14. When a Descriptive Adjective is connected with the Noun standing in the Accusative, the **ን**: is not generally affixed to both, but sometimes to the Substantive, sometimes to its epitheton; when the latter is a Participle, to the Participle: *e.g.* it is equally good to say **ደህን፡ ሰውን**: or **ደህኖውን፡ ሰው**: "a good man," but with a Participle; *e.g.*

የበላሽውን፡ እንጅራ፡ "The bread which thou (f.) hast eaten."

15. When several Adjectives are connected with a Substantive in the Accusative Case, the **ን**: is put to each of the Adjectives, but not to the Substantive; *e.g.*

ተላቁን፡ ወፍረመንም፡ በጎ፡ ፍረንም፡ የምትፈራውን፡ ዛፍ፡
ቀረጡ፡ "They cut down a large, thick, and good-fruit-bearing tree," *i.e.*

"a large and thick tree which bore good fruit."

16. Concerning the construction of the Genitive with the Accusative, see §. 5.

CHAP. IV.

ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

1. The Amharic Language has almost the same mode of comparing things with each other as the Hebrew; namely, especially by prefixing the Preposition **ከ**: “of,” “from,” to the Positive Noun or Pronoun; *e.g.*

ከመጽከት: መማር: ይቻላል: “Learning is better than to be idle.”

2. In many cases, they add the Postpositive Particle **ይልቅ**: which gives, however, no additional force to the idea of gradation already expressed by **ከ**:; but it stands generally at the end of a sentence, and is used more for Verbs than for Adjectives; *e.g.*

ይህን: ዛፍ: ትረዝማለች: ከዚያች: ይልቅ:

“This tree is tall, more than that one.”

Here it would be equally good to say,

ይህን: ዛፍ: ከዚያች: ትረዝማለች: “This tree is taller than that one.”

3. The Verbs **በለጠ**: “is greater,” **አነሰ**: “is smaller,” “less,” and **ተቻለ**: “is better,” are in themselves of a comparative nature: nevertheless, when brought together with other Adjectives or Verbs for comparison, they require the **ከ**—: as well as Adjectives or other Verbs; *e.g.*

ጥበብ: ከከብት: ይቻላል: “Wisdom is better than wealth.”

ዝሆን: ከአይጥ: ይበልጣል: “An elephant is larger than a mouse.”

አንጎላላ: ከአንኮበር: ታንሳለች: “Angollala is smaller than Ankobar.”

4. Besides the preceding, every verb of quality, condition, or even of action, is capable of expressing a comparison when constructed with **ከ**: for the adjective is contained in that verb; *e.g.*

ተራራ: ከዛፍ: ይረዝማል: “A mountain is higher than a tree.”

ንጢአት: ከሞት: ትከፋለች: “Sin is worse than death.”

Verbs of action, however, require **ይልቅ**: *e.g.*

ከጴጥሮስ: ይልቅ: ጳውሎስ: ይከመ: “Paul laboured more than Peter.”

5. The Superlative is rendered by **ከሁሉ**: (with Suffixes) and **ከሁሉ: ይልቅ**: *e.g.*

ምድር: ታላቅ: ነት: ዓለም: ይበልጣል: እግዚአብሔር: ገን: ከሁሉ: ይበልጣል: “The earth is great; the universe is greater; but God is greatest (of all).”

ከሁላቸው: ይልቅ: እርሱ: ተማረ: “He learned more than they all.”

CHAP. V.

ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numeral does not, properly speaking, form a particular part of speech, but is either, as the Cardinals, a Substantive, or, as are the Ordinals, an Adjective, or, as the Distributive, an Adverb. We need therefore to say but little about their Syntax.

2. The Cardinal Numbers are always, when connected with other Nouns, to be considered as in apposition with them; and they always precede; *e.g.*

ሁለት ሰዎች: "two men."

3. All the Numbers, from One upwards, seem to be considered as Plurals; wherefore they are of common gender, except አንድ: "one," which has in the feminine, አንዷት::

4. Notwithstanding this, the noun to which the numeral is joined, is not always used in the plural number. Although they use, in common language, the singular and the plural indiscriminately, the rule seems to hold good, that the round numbers, ten, twenty, &c. up to a hundred, and the large numbers, as hundred, thousand, ten thousand (አልፎ: ሰባቶ, are more frequently constructed with the noun in the singular than in the plural, and the numbers between every ten generally in the plural; *e.g.*

ሁለት ሰዎች: "two men."

ህያ: ሰው: "twenty man."

5. The Numbers ህያ: ሥላሳ: አርባ: አምሳ: ስድሳ: ስባ: ስዓንያ: ዘጠኙ: መቶ:: are generally used for Ordinals as well as for Cardinals; or rather, as they do not like to adopt the ordinal form for those numbers, they place the cardinal behind the noun as a predicate; *e.g.*

መጽሐፍ: ህያ: "book twenty," instead of ህያኛ: መጽሐፍ: "the twentieth book."

6. The form of the Ordinal Numbers is regularly derived from the Cardinals; except, as in our European and in other languages, the first; although in compound numbers that also is used in the regular form; *e.g.*

አሥራ: አንደኛ: "the eleventh."

When used in a simple form, አንደኛ: signifies "unique," "sole," "only." In enumeration, they use መጀመርያ: "the beginning," or ፈተኛ: "the foremost," "first."

7. As for the Distributives, nothing needs to be added to what has been said Part II. Ch. II. §. 4.

CHAP. VI.

SYNTAX OF THE SEPARABLE PRONOUNS.

1. The Separable Personal Pronoun is used,

(a) When it is the subject of a sentence. **ኣኒ: ኣሔደሁ:** "I go," although it is not necessary to use it.

(b) When an emphasis lies on the pronoun; e.g.

ኣርሱ: ኣላደረገውም: ኣኒ: ኣደረገሁት: ኣንጅ:
"He has not done it, but I have."

2. The third person singular and plural is used for demonstration; as is the reverse in the Latin and Greek; e.g.

ኣሁን: ያሁን: ኣርሱ: ነው: ያሁህ: "That which thou hast now been telling me, is the same with what I told thee."

3. The Separable Possessive Pronoun is used only when a stress is laid upon it; e.g. **ይህ: ቤት: የኒ: ነው:** "This house is mine."

Cf. John xvii. 9, 10: **ያንተ: የትውልድ: ለኔም: የሆነ: ሁሉ: ኣርሱ: ላንተ: ነው:: ያንተውም: ኣርሱ: ለኔ: ነው:** "For they are Thine. And all that is mine, the same is Thine; and Thine, the same is mine."

Where no such stress lies on the Possessive, Suffixes are used.

4. The Singular Masculine of both the *Demonstrative* Pronouns forms Adverbs, by the junction of Prepositions with the Genitive Case of those Pronouns. See Part II. Ch. V. 4. (b).

5. The *Interrogative* **ማን:** "who?" "which?" "what?" is used for persons: it is made use of, also, for inanimate subjects in the phrase **ማን: ነው: ስሙ:** or **ስሙ: ማን: ነው: (ማነው:)** "What is his (its) name?" On the contrary, the Impersonal **ምን:** is employed as a Personal Interrogative, by way of utter contempt, in the expression, **ምን: ኣባቱ:** "What is his father?" Both these expressions are elliptical.

6. The Indefinite **ሁሉ:**, which may be considered, as it is in the other Semitic languages, as a Noun, **ሁል:** (هَلْ, هَلْ) with suffixes, assumes no other suffix in the singular than the suffixes masculine and feminine of the third person; but it takes all the suffixes of the plural: **ሁሉ: ሁልዋ: ሁላቸው: ሁላችሁ: ሁላችን:**

7. When **ሁሉ:** is absolute, it stands at the beginning of a sentence: when connected with Nouns or Participles, it follows them; e.g.

ሁሉ: ሔደ: "All is gone."

ሁሉን: ኣደረገ: "He has done all."

ሰው: ሁሉ: "All men," "every man," "people in general," &c.

8. **ሁሉ**:, as subject of the sentence, and without any other suffixes, may have its verb either in the singular or in the plural: when connected with nouns or participles, or with other suffixes, the number and person of the verb are determined by those nouns, participles, or suffixes; *e.g.*

ሁሉ ይጠፋል: “All will (sing.) perish”; or,

ሁሉ ይጠፋሉ: “All will (plur.) perish.”

ሁላችን ግንድ ነን: “We are all together.”

ነገሥታት ሁሉ ተሰበሰቡ ሁላቸውም ተዋጉ: “All the kings were assembled together, and all of them engaged in war.”

9. **አንድ**: “some,” “something,” “any thing”; with negation, “nothing”; *e.g.*

አንድን ሰጠው: “Give him something.”

አንድን አልተቀበልሁም: “I received nothing.”

10. **አያሌ**: signifies an indefinite number or quantity; *e.g.*

አያሌ ሰዎች ያምኑታል አያሌ ግን ይጠራጠሩበታል:

“Some men believe; others doubt it.”

When it is predicate, it signifies a large quantity:

ከብቱ አያሌ ነው: “His property is considerable.”

11. In order to express Reciprocity, the Abyssinians make use of the form **እርሱ በርሱ**—, with the Plural Suffixes **ፊችን**: **ፊችሁ**: and **ፊችው**: and a Reciprocativ or other Verb; *e.g.*

እርሱ በርሱን ጥድድድ: “Love one another!”

12. An Indefinite Pronoun is **አንተን**: which signifies, “The what’s his name.” Gr. *ὁ δεινα*; French, *chose*; German, *Dingerich*; *e.g.*

አንተን አይሄድም: “The what’s his name does not go.”

CHAP. VII.

ON THE AFFIXED PRONOUNS.

1. As to their position, that is determined, the Nominal Suffixes being joined to the final letter of the Noun (or Adverb); the verbal to the last radical of the Verb, or to the Verbal Afformative. Adjectives do not assume suffixes, except when considered as Substantives.

2. The Nominal Suffixes are to be considered as possessive; the verbal ones as objective; *e.g.*

ልጄ: “My child.”

መታኝ: “He struck me.”

Adverbs with Suffixes are treated by them as Substantives, the nominal Suffixes being joined to them; *e.g.*

በላይ: "over me."

3. Concerning the Verbal Suffixes, enough has been said in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV. sect. V. We add here, that the suffix of the first pronoun in the singular is sometimes used pleonastically; *e.g.*

ሐይሁኝ: "I am gone."

CHAP. VIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE VERB.

Having discussed the nature and use of the Verb, and its various parts, rather extensively in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV., we need not here go through it at full length; but shall offer, in the first place, such additional remarks on the Moods, Tenses, and Persons, as are deemed necessary; and, in the second place, to show the agreement of one verb with another, and of the verb with the other parts of speech.

SECTION I.

On the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.

1. The following Tenses are used for the *past* time: the Simple Preterite of the Indicative, the Compound Preterite of the Contingent, and the Compound Preterite of the Constructive.

(a) The Simple Preterite of the Indicative is used,

α. For the Perfect Tense; *e.g.*

እንገደ: መጣ: "A stranger has arrived."

ሕዝቡ: ተሰበሰቡ: "The people have gathered themselves together."

β. For the Historical Tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect; *e.g.*

ከተረረዎ: በወረደ: ጊዜ: ተከተሉት: ብዙ: አሕዛብ:

"And when he descended from the mountain, many people followed him."

Matt. viii. 1.

ተኣዛዙን: ከፈጸመ: በኋላ: ከዚያ: አለፈ:

"When he had finished his command, he passed over from thence."

Matt. xi. 1.

γ. For the Present or Immediate Future, in a very few instances. So when visitors courteously ask leave to go, they do it by saying: **ሐይሁ:** "I am gone," *i.e.* "If you allow me, I go now." Or when a person is

frequently called, and does not come, he at last answers : መጻሁ፡ መጻሁ፡ "I come ! I come !"

δ. With Conjunction Prefixes, it serves for the Potential and Optative Moods.—See Sect. II. §. 5. and Isa. i. 9.

(b) The Compound Preterite of the Contingent is used,

α. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Indicative ; e.g.

እኔ፡ ሳለመጣ፡ እርሳቸው፡ ይበሉ፡ ነበሩ፡ "Before I came, they had been eating."

β. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Potential Mood :

ብትለምነው፡ ቢሰጥህ፡ ነበር፡ "If thou wouldst ask him, he would give thee."

ይህን፡ ካላደረግህ፡ ብወድህ፡ ነበርህ፡ "If thou hadst not done this, I should have loved thee."

(c) The Compound Preterite of the Constructive is used chiefly for the Pluperfect, and sometimes for the Imperfect of the Indicative ; e.g.

ሰጥኹ፡ ነበርሁ፡ "I had given."

2. Tenses used for the *Present*, are, the Present of the Indicative ; the Second, or Aoristic Constructive ; and the Contingent with Conjunctions.

(a) The Present Indicative and the Aoristic Constructive are both used for the Present Indicative ; e.g.

እርሱ፡ ተዉውተዋል፡ እኔ፡ ዝም፡ እላለሁ፡

"Whereas he is talking, I keep silence."

(b) The Present Indicative is used for both the Present and the Future tenses : the Aoristic Constructive serves especially for an action, condition, state, or suffering, which *continues* ; and therefore, although it is more frequently used for the Present, it is likewise made use of for the Perfect. This peculiarity of both these forms is owing to the Auxiliary Verb Substantive አለ፡ with which they are composed.

(c) The Simple Contingent Mood serves for the Present as well as for the Future Tenses, when connected with Particles ; e.g. the Participles የመጣ፡ "he that comes ;" ሲመጣ፡ "when he comes ;" ሳይመጣ፡ "before he comes ;" Negative assertions : አይመጣም፡ "he comes not," "will not come ;" Conditional expressions : ቢወርስ፡ "if he end," or "if he ends ;" Final and referential : እንደጽፍ፡ "that he writes" or "write ;" Final : ሊወጣ፡ ተነሣ፡ "he rose to go out," where it is for an Infinitive ; ወንድሙን፡ ይረዳ፡ ዘንድ፡ ሔደ፡ "He went to assist (that he might assist) his brother."

3. The *Future* time is generally expressed by the same forms which serve for the Present, except the Aoristic Constructive. Vide 2. a.—In p. 66 of this work we pointed out another mode of a decidedly future form; besides which they make use of the Contingent with አለ: or with ይሆናል: The one is found in the negative expression, Ezek. xvii. 9: ስረ: ይመዘክ: የለምን: ፍሬውስ: ይቀረጥ: የለምን: “Shall not its root be extracted; and its fruit, shall it not be cut off.” But these two latter forms are not confined to the Future: they are also used for the Present Tense.

SECTION II.

On the Moods of the Amharic Verb.

On this head, we shall add but little to what has been stated Chap. IV. of the preceding part, and in the preceding Section of this Chapter.

1. The *Contingent* serves for the Indicative, Subjunctive, Potential, and Participial Moods; as is shown in the preceding Section.

2. The *Subjunctive* expresses a desire, or an indirect request, order, command, or obligation.—See p. 72.

3. The Infinitive, as Verbal Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes; but relates to and acts upon other nouns in a verbal capacity; e.g.

ለንጉሥ: መተዘዘ: “My obeying the King,” “my being obedient to the King.”

It is, however, likewise constructed as a Noun; e.g.

የክርስቲስ: መምጣት: “The coming of Christ.”

ፍሬን: ለማፍራት: ተተከለች: “In order to bear fruit was it planted.”

4. The Participles are of the same character, partaking of the nature of Adjectives (as the Infinitive does of the nature of Nouns), and of the Verb, as has been shown in the preceding Part, pp. 72, 73. The Simple forms, however, have more of a nominal; the Augmented forms more of a verbal character. The Augmented forms are verbally flexible through all the persons; besides their being capable of receiving Prepositions, and the Accusative ን: marking them as Nouns. ልቡ: የጸፍ: ሰው: አንድ: ጊዜ: የለውን: ነገር: መለወጥ: አይወድም: “A man of a *determined* character does not like to change his word *which* he once has spoken. ፍሬውን: ለቃሚ: ደስ: ይለዋል: ዘርን: ከሚዘሩት: ይልቅ: “The gatherer of the fruit rejoices, more than those that sowed the seed.”

5. There is in the Amharic Language no peculiar form for the Optative Mood: they express it by circumscription; e.g.

ቢሆንስ: ባስተማርህኝ: በወደድሁ: “If it had been, if thou hadst instructed me, I should have liked it.”

SECTION III.

Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence.

1. The Amharic Verb having all the personal forms connected with it, it is capable of including the subject in itself; *e.g.*

ጠበቀ: "he observed." **መታህ:** "thou hast beaten."

And by the aid of Suffixed Pronouns and Prepositions, it is further capable of expressing a whole sentence in itself; *e.g.*

መጣብህ: "He came upon thee." **መታህው:** "Thou hast struck him."

2. But when, as is more usual, the subject is separate from the Verb, the latter should agree with it in gender, number, and person; *e.g.*

ይህች ሴት አትሔድም: "This woman does not go."

ሉላልቱ ተከተሉት: "His servants followed him."

3. Collective Nouns, however, which admit of a Plural, have the Verb sometimes in the Singular, sometimes in the Plural: *e.g.*

ሕዝቡ ተሰበሰቡ: "The people gathered itself together"; or

ሕዝብ ተሰበሰበ: "The people gathered *themselves* together."

4. When there are more than one subject in a sentence, the Verb stands either in the Third Person of the Plural, or it is determined by what is considered as the chief subject; *e.g.*

ወንድና ሴት መጣ: "Male and female came."

ንጉሥና ሠራዊቱ ተመቱ: "The king and his army were beaten."

When the person who is addressed forms one of the subjects, the Verb follows in the Second Person Plural; *e.g.*

ኪደን፣ ንበረም፣ አንተም ልትማሩ ናችሁ:

"Kiddan, Gabru, and thou, (you) are to learn."

When the speaker is included, the Verb is to be in the First Person Plural:

እርሳቸውና እኛ ተለዩ: "They and we are separated."

5. When the subject consists of several Infinitives, the number is not multiplied, and the Verb is used in the singular; *e.g.*

መማርና መስራት ደጠቅማል: "Learning and working is useful."

But when the subject consists of several Participles, which are considered as Nouns, the Verb must be in the plural; *e.g.*

ሰራቂና ገደይ መጡበት: "A thief and a murderer came upon him."

6. Active and Transitive Verbs have their objects in the Accusative

A A

Case: see Ch. III. 10. Transitive and Causative Verbs may have a double Accusative; *e.g.*

መልእክትን፡ አስጻፈው፡ "He caused him to write a letter."

But as these Verbs may sometimes be used as Intransitive, the use of Prepositions is frequently applied; *e.g.*

ፈርደበት፡ "He judged *over* (or *against*) him."

ጻፈበት፡ "He wrote *in* it."

ሰውን፡ አስመጣለት፡ "He caused a man to come *for* (or *to*) him."

7. Intransitive Verbs are generally connected with their objects by Prepositions; *e.g.*

በቤት፡ ነበረ፡ "He was in the house."

ወደገሩ፡ ሔደ፡ "He went to his country."

በወምበሩ፡ ተቀመጠ፡ "He sat upon his chair."

8. When the object of the sentence is another Verb, that is expressed by the Infinitive, or by the Contingent with Conjunctions; *e.g.*

መማር፡ ይወዳል፡ "He likes to learn"; or,

ይማር፡ ዘንድ፡ ይወዳል፡ "He likes that he may learn."

መድገም፡ ያውቃል፡ "He can read."

9. The reigning Verb should be always at the end of the sentence, whether the object be simple, or complex, or compound; *e.g.*

ሰው፡ ያልወደደውን፡ ነገር፡ አያደርግም፡

"What man does not like, he will not perform."

እግዚአብሔር፡ በትእዛዙ፡ የከለከለውን፡ ነገር፡ ሰው፡ ያደርጋል፡

"What God in His law has prohibited, man does commit."

በእግዚአብሔር፡ ቃል፡ እናምን፡ ዘንድ፡ በጌጣላቸንም፡ አዘነን፡ የሱስ፡ ክርስቲስ፡ የሰራውን፡ መድኃኒት፡ በሃይማኖት፡ እንቀበል፡ ዘንድ፡ ወንጌል፡ ያስተምረናል፡ "The Gospel teaches us to believe in the Word of God, to repent of our sins, and to receive in faith the Salvation which Christ has wrought out for us."

CHAP. IX.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE REMAINING PARTS OF SPEECH.

As the doctrine of the Particles, *i.e.* Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, has been pretty fully exhibited in the Etymological Part, Ch. V. to Ch. VIII., we do not think it necessary to add any more: and so we finish here the Amharic Grammar, adding only a few Specimens of Common Conversation, and a few Exercises.

PART IV.

SOME SPECIMENS OF CONVERSATION,

AND

A FEW EXERCISES.

1. CONVERSATIONAL MODES OF SALUTATION.

IN conversation, the Abyssinians are very polite towards each other, without using quite such a bombastic style as is common among the Arabs and other Eastern nations. When speaking of the Pronouns and under the Verb, we have mentioned two honorific distinctions for the second person in the singular, and that they speak of a third person of respect in the plural. A neglect of these distinctions is overlooked in foreigners, whilst learning their language; but amongst themselves it is taken as an offence, except with intimate friends, and in a few other instances. In saluting, the various times of the day, the state of health, frequency of intercourse, season of the year, and some other circumstances, are to be regarded as determining the mode of address.

As for the time of the day when persons meet, four times are distinguished, for which four separate Verbs are used; viz. (a) *The morning*, until the sun has finished half his course from the horizon to the meridian, i.e. between nine and ten o'clock A.M. During this time, when meeting, the verb አደረ: "to spend the night," "to rest," is used in the Preterite: when parting, the verb ረፈደ: "to spend the forenoon," አስረፈደ: "to make spend the forenoon," or ቀለ: "to spend (አቀለ: "to make spend) the middle of the day," in the Imperative or Subjunctive Mood. (b) *The forenoon*, from about nine to eleven o'clock A.M. At meeting, they salute each other with the verb ረፈደ: "to spend the forenoon," in the Preterite: when parting, with the Verb ቀለ: or አቀለ: (c) *Noon and afternoon*, to sun-set. When meeting, they use ቀለ: in the Preterite: when parting before five P.M., አቀለ: when after five, the Subjunctive of አስመሽ: "to make pass the evening," or Imperative or Subjunctive of መሽ: "to pass the evening." (d) *Evening and night*, from sun-set to the first break of the day. When meeting, the Preterite of መሽ: when parting, either the Subjunctive or the Imperative of አደረ: "to pass the night," "to rest," or Subjunctive of አሳደረ: "to make pass the night," &c. is used.

ይዓፍር: "May He (i.e. God) be gracious!" and ይፈወስ: "May He heal," "restore!" both with Suffixes, is used for addressing sick persons. The former wish also is used when a person sneezes. ገባ: in the Preterite, is used when meeting a person who has newly arrived at the place: in the

Subjunctive with Suffixes, when parting with a person who goes to another country. **ሰነቡት**: "to pass the time from one interview to another," is used in the Preterite, when persons meet who have not seen each other for some time. **አሰነቡት**: "to make pass &c., is used at parting, when they do not expect to meet again for a considerable time. Then they add, **ያገኙን**: "May He bring us together again!" **ከረመ**: "to pass the rainy season," and **አሰከረመ**: its transitive, is used in the same manner.

The following Specimens of Conversation will illustrate the preceding remarks. We choose the imaginary meeting of the servant Gabru, with his master Kiddana Maryam, after his return from an errand to a friend, Aito Malku, who lives in a distant part of the country. The meeting is supposed to take place in the morning.

K. M. በጸሀፍ፡ ገገህን፡ ገብረ፡

Hast thou arrived in health (safely &c.), Gabru?

**G. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስገን፡፡
ጸሀፍ፡ ሰነቡትን፡ ጌታው፡፡**

God be praised! Have you, master, been well all the time since I saw you last?

**K. M. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስገን፡፡
ገን፡ ጸሀፍ፡ ሰነቡትህን፡ አንተ፡**

Thank God! Hast thou been all the time well?

**G. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስገን፡፡
እርሰወን፡ ጸሀፍ፡ ነው፡**

Thanks to God! Are you well?

**K. M. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስገን፡፡
ገን፡ ጸሀፍ፡ ነኝ፡፡ መንገድህን፡
ቀንተ፡ ነበረ፡**

Thanks to God! I am well. Hast thou had a good journey?

**G. መንገዱ፡ ቀኖ፡፡ ከዚህ፡ ተነሥቼ፡
በሶስት፡ ቀን፡ ደረስሁኝ፡፡ ከዚያም፡
አንድ፡ ቀን፡ ውሉ፡፡ ተመለስሁኝ፡
በሁለት፡ ቀንም፡፡ ተኩሉ፡ ገባሁኝ፡፡**

I had a good journey. I arrived there in three days after I had started from hence, and staying there one day, I returned, and in two days and a half arrived here.

**K. M. ምንድር፡ ይላሉ፡ አይተ፡
መልኩ፡፡**

What does Aito Malku say?

**G. ደህናሉን፡ ደህናሉን፡ ደህናሉን፡
ደህና፡ ሰነቡትን፡ እጅጉን፡፡ ደህና፡
ነወን፡ ደህና፡ ከረመን፡፡ ወደጅነቱ፡
ሰማይ፡ ምድር፡፡ ያህል፡ ናት፡ አሉ፡፡
እርሰወም፡፡ የሰደዱትን፡ ነገር፡ ሰጠኝቸው፡፡**

"Are you well? Are you well? Are you well? Have you been quite well since our last interview? Are you well? Have you passed the rainy season well? My friendship amounts to heaven and earth," he said. — What you sent to him

ኔጅግም፡ ደስ፡ አሉበት። ንግ
ዚአብሔር፡ ደስጠዎ፡ ንግዚአብ
ሔር፡ ደስጠዎ፡ ንግዚአብሔር፡
ያመስግነዎ፡ አሉ፡

K. M. ጉደዩሳ፡፡

G. አሺ፡ አድርገዋለሁ፡ አሉ፡፡

K. M. በጎ፡ አሁንም፡ ምሳ
ህን፡ በልተህ፡ ወደ፡ ታመመች፡
ሴት፡ ወደ፡ ወለተ፡ ገብርኤል፡
ሔድ፡ ንግዚአብሔር፡ ደማ
ርሽ፡ ንግዚአብሔር፡ ይፈውስሽ፡
ዛረ፡ ጥቂት፡ አልቀለልሽምን፡
በልልኝ፡፡

G. አሺ፡፡ ሔድሁኝ፡

K. M. አሺ፡፡ በደህ፡ ያው
ለህ፡፡

G. በደህ፡ ያውሉ፡ (ዋሉ፡)

I delivered, and he was very glad of it, and said, "May God give it (re-ward) you! May God give it you! May God glorify you!" (i.e. I am very much obliged to you.)

But how is (what did he say to) my request?

He agreed to do it.

Very well. Now eat thy dinner, and go to Walleeta Gabriel, a sick woman, and (give her my respects, and tell her that I sympathize with her in her illness) say for me, "May God have mercy on thee, and restore thee! Doest thou not feel a little better to-day?"

Very well. I go then.

Very well. (Mayest thou spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

(May you spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

TASFU, another servant, enters, announcing a visitor.

Tasfu. አይተ፡ ወልደ፡ ድንገል፡
አሉ፡፡ ሊገቡን፡፡

There is Aito Walda Dengel:
Shall he come in?

K. M. አሺ፡፡ ይገቡ፡፡

Yes, let him come.

On entering, KIDDANA MARYAM attempts to rise; but AITO WALDA DENGEL hastens to prevent it; saying, ይኑሩ፡ ይኑሩ፡ "Remain remain!" or as usual:

በንግዚአብሔር፡ በማርያም፡፡

By God! by Mary! (i.e. Do not rise.)

W. D. ንንጂት፡ አደሩ፡

How have you passed the night?

K. M. ንግዚአብሔር፡ ደመስ
ገን፡፡ ደህ፡ አደሩን፡፡

Thank God! Have you passed the night well?

W. D. ንግዚአብሔር፡ ደመስ
ገን፡፡ ደህ፡ ረፈደን፡፡

Thank God! Have you passed the forenoon well?

K. M. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመ
ሰገን፡ እጅጉን፡ ደህን፡ ረፈደ፡

Thanks to God! Have you passed
the forenoon very well?

W. D. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስ
ገን፡ ምሽተዎን፡ ልጆችዎ፡ ሁ
ሉ፡ ደህን፡ ናቸው፡

Thank God! Are your wife and
all your children well?

K. M. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይመስ
ገን፡ ምሽቴ፡ ዛሬ፡ ታማላች፡

Thank God! My wife is poorly
to-day.

W. D. አይ፡ ሕመማቸው፡
ምንድር፡ ነው፡

Ah! What is her complaint?

K. M. ሆድዋ፡ ያማታል፡

She has pain in the bowels.

W. D. ተስፋ፡

Tasfu!

T. አቤት፡

Sir!

W. D. እግዚአብሔር፡ ይማረ
ዎ፡ እግዚአብሔር፡ ይፈውሰዎ፡
በልልኝ፡ እመቤትህን፡

Speak to thy mistress in my be-
half; saying, "May God have mercy
on you! May God restore you!"

T. አሁን፡ ጥቂት፡ ደቀለገል፡
ይላሉ፡

She says that she feels now a
little better.

W. D. እንጊደህ፡ ያውቁኝ፡
ገልጽረገዮንም፡ ይሰጡኝ፡

Henceforth, know me (as your
friend), and give me a Baldaraba*
(a man that introduces me to you).

K. M. እሺ፡ አንተ፡ ተስፋ፡
አይተ፡ ወልደ፡ ድንገል፡ በመጡ፡
ወትር፡ አድርሳቸው፡

Very well. Thou, Tasfu, when-
ever Aito Walda Dengel comes, do
thou introduce him.

W. D. ሔድሁኝ፡

I go then.

K. M. እሺ፡ በደህን፡ ያውሉ፡

Very well. May He make you
spend the middle of the day well
i.e. Good bye!

W. D. በደህን፡ ያውሉ፡

May He make you spend the &c.

K. M. አሚን፡

Amen!

* See ገልጽረገ፡ in the Dictionary.

2. A FEW EXERCISES.

SALVATION.

(See Amharic Spelling Book, p. 20.)

አሁን: እንደህ: ሲሆን: Now, as it is thus, all men having
 ሰውም: ሁሉ: እግዚአብሔርን: by their sins offended God, and fallen
 በጌጣላቱ: በድሉታልፍ: ከእግ under the divine judgment and eter-
 ዚአብሔር: ፍርድ: ከዘላለም nal damnation, God has opened for
 ም: ኩነት: በታች: ሲኖር: እግዚ us another way, a way of Grace,
 አብሔር: ለላውን: የጸጋውን: when He in His mercy gave His
 መንገድ: ከፈተልክ: በታላቅ: Beloved Son as a ransom in our
 ምህረቱ: የተወደደውን: ልጁን: stead.
 በፍ: ፈንታ: ቤዛ: አድርጎ: በሰ
 ጠው: ጊዜ::

BEST USE OF GEOGRAPHY.

(See Preface to the Amharic Geography.)

ደህኝን: በጣም: ብትማር: If thou learn this (Geography)
 በቤት: ተቀምጠህ: ወደ: ረቅ: perfectly, thou wilt, even whilst re-
 አገር: እንደሚሔድ: ሰው: ትሆ remaining at home, become like a
 የለህ:: በቀደምም: ሰማቸውን: man that goes into a distant coun-
 እንኳ: ያልሰማህውን: አሕዛብ: try: and of nations, whose very name
 መኖርያቸውን: ጠገያቸውንም: thou didst not hear before, thou
 ስራቸውንም: ንብረታቸውንም: wilt find here their residences, their
 ከዚህ: ታገኛለህ:: ሁላቸውም: nature, employments, their state and
 ወንድሞችህ: ኖቸው: ሁላቸው conditions. And all these are thy
 ውም: ታላቆችና: ታናሾች: ብል brethren; all of them, great and
 ሃተኞችና: አራዊትም: በጎችና: little, civilized and barbarians, good
 ክፍችም: ዘመዶችህ: ያባትህ: and evil, are thy relations, the sons
 ያደም: ልጆች:: እወቃቸው: ተ of Adam, thy father. Know them,
 ማርባቸውም: ስራቸውንም: learn of them; and examine into
 መርመር:: የምታገኝባቸውንም: their works. Whatever thou findest
 በጎ: ነገር: ጠብቅ: ከክፉም: good in them, keep, and flee from
 ሽሽ:: ሁላቸውንም: ውድድ: evil. Love them all, as God wills
 ነፍሰህን: ትወድ: ዘንድ: እግዚ that thou shalt love thyself. But
 አብሔር: እንደሚሻ: ከሁሉም: above all things, ask thyself, saying,
 ይልቅ: እንደህ: ብለህ: ነፍሰህን:

ጥዋቅ። እግዚአብሔር፡ ስለ፡ “Wherefore has God created me?
 ምንድር፡ ፈጠረኝ። የእግዚአ “What is the will of God with me?
 ብሔርም፡ ፈቃድ፡ በኔ፡ ምንድር፡ “and how do I accomplish the will
 ነው። እኔም፡ እንደት፡ እፈጽማ “of God? What is the will of God
 ለሁ፡ የእግዚአብሔርን፡ ፈቃድ። “concerning my people and nation?
 ምንድር፡ ነው፡ የእግዚአብሔር፡ “And we, the people of Abyssinia,
 ፈቃድ፡ በሕዝቤ፡ በወገኖቼም። “do we perform what God requires
 እኛም፡ የሐበኝ፡ ሰዎች፡ እግዚ “us to do? And if we have not
 አብሔር፡ የሚቻለን፡ እናደርገዋ “done it, what is our duty henceforth
 ለንን። ባላደረግነውም፡ ምን፡ “to do?” If thou askest in this
 ደግሳል፡ እንጊደህ፡ እናደርግ፡ manner, the Holy Scriptures will
 ዘንድ። እንደሁም፡ ብትጠይቅ፡ satisfactorily answer thee. Hear
 መጽሐፍ፡ ቅዱስ፡ በጣም፡ ይመ “them, and follow them!
 ልሰልሃል። እርሱንም፡ ስማ፡
 ተከተለውም።

THE END.

LONDON :

PRINTED BY RICHARD WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.

